

# **Evergreen System Administration at your Library**

**Documentation Interest Group**

# Evergreen System Administration at your Library

Documentation Interest Group

# Table of Contents

I. Introduction .....	9
1. About This Documentation .....	11
2. About Evergreen .....	12
II. Logging into Evergreen .....	13
3. Registering a Workstation .....	15
4. Basic Login .....	16
5. Logging Out .....	17
III. Best Practices for Using the Browser .....	18
6. Pop-up Blockers .....	20
7. Setting Browser Defaults for Web Client .....	21
Setting the Web Client as the Home Page in Chrome .....	21
Setting the Web Client as the Home Page in Firefox .....	21
Turning off print headers and footers in Firefox .....	21
Turning off print headers and footers in Chrome .....	22
8. Tab Buttons and Keyboard Shortcuts .....	23
Setting New Tab Behavior .....	23
IV. Configuring Evergreen for your workstation .....	24
9. Setting search defaults .....	26
10. Turning off sounds .....	27
V. Library Settings Editor .....	28
11. Introduction .....	30
12. Editing Library Settings .....	31
13. Exporting/Importing Library Settings .....	33
14. Settings Overview .....	35
Data Types .....	76
VI. Organizational Unit administration .....	78
15. Describing your organization .....	80
Organization Unit Types .....	80
Organizational Units .....	80
Standing Penalties .....	81
VII. Ordering materials .....	83
16. Introduction .....	86
17. When should libraries use acquisitions? .....	87
18. Managing Funds .....	88
Funding Sources (Required) .....	88
Funds (Required) .....	88
Fund Tags (Optional) .....	89
19. Ordering .....	90
Providers (Required) .....	90
Distribution Formulas (Optional) .....	90
Helpful acquisitions Library Settings .....	90
Preparing for order record loading .....	91
Preparing to send electronic orders from Evergreen .....	91
20. Acquisitions Administration .....	93
Acquisitions Settings .....	93
Cancel/Delay reasons .....	93
Claiming .....	94
Currency Types .....	96
Distribution Formulas .....	97
Electronic Data Interchange .....	98
Exchange Rates .....	103

MARC Federated Search .....	104
Fund Tags .....	105
Funding Sources .....	106
Funds .....	107
Invoice menus .....	111
Line Item Features .....	112
Providers .....	113
VIII. Cataloging administration .....	116
21. Authorities .....	119
Authority Control Sets .....	119
Thesauri .....	120
Authority Fields .....	121
Browse Axes .....	123
22. Call Number Prefixes and Suffixes .....	125
Configure call number prefixes .....	125
Configure call number suffixes .....	126
Apply Call Number Prefixes and Suffixes .....	126
23. Statistical Categories Editor .....	127
24. MARC Import Remove Fields .....	131
Create a MARC Import Remove Fields profile .....	131
Import Options .....	132
Permissions to use this Feature .....	134
25. Item Tags (Digital Bookplates) .....	135
Administration .....	135
Creating item Tags .....	135
Managing Item Tags .....	137
26. MARC Record Attributes .....	138
Managing Fixed Field Drop-down Context Menus .....	138
Multi Valued Fields and Composite Record Attributes .....	138
27. Z39.50 Servers .....	146
Restrict Z39.50 Sources by Permission Group .....	146
Storing Z39.50 Server Credentials .....	148
28. Administering shelving locations .....	149
Creating new shelving locations .....	149
Deleting shelving locations .....	149
Modifying shelving location order .....	150
Shelving location groups .....	150
29. Importing materials in the staff client .....	152
Staff client batch record imports .....	152
IX. Circulation administration .....	158
30. Circulation policies .....	162
Borrowing items: who, what, for how long .....	162
Hold-driven recalls .....	173
31. Item Status .....	175
Adding Item Statuses .....	176
Deleting Item Statuses .....	177
Editing Item Statuses .....	177
32. Circulating uncataloged materials .....	178
Introduction .....	178
Pre-cataloged item settings .....	178
Non-cataloged item settings .....	178
33. Patron registration administration .....	180
Email addresses .....	180
Parent/guardian field .....	180

Privacy waiver .....	180
34. Patron self-registration administration .....	181
Library Settings .....	181
35. Holds, transits, and resource sharing .....	183
Age hold protection .....	183
Best-Hold Selection Sort Order .....	183
Org Unit Proximity Adjustments .....	186
Floating Groups .....	188
36. Working with money .....	192
Accepting credit card payments .....	192
Cash Reports .....	192
Setting limits on allowed payment amounts .....	193
37. User buckets .....	194
Introduction .....	194
Editing users .....	194
Deleting users .....	195
Editing Statistical Category Entries .....	195
38. Circulation timesavers and workflows .....	196
Barcode Completion .....	196
Address Alert .....	203
39. Library closures .....	208
Setting regular library hours .....	208
Set closed dates using the Closed Dates Editor .....	208
40. Emergency Closing Handler .....	210
Introduction .....	210
Administration .....	210
Create an emergency closing .....	210
Hard due dates .....	212
41. Booking Module Administration .....	214
Creating Bookable Non-Bibliographic Resources .....	214
Editing Non-Bibliographic Resources .....	221
Deleting Non-bibliographic Resources .....	222
42. Print (Receipt) Templates .....	223
Receipt Templates .....	223
Editing Receipts .....	224
Exporting and importing Customized Receipts .....	227
43. Self checkout .....	229
Introduction .....	229
Initializing the self check .....	229
Using the self check .....	230
X. Search Settings .....	231
44. Adjusting Relevance Ranking and Indexing .....	233
Metabib Class FTS Config Maps .....	233
Metabib Field FTS Config Maps .....	233
45. Statistical Popularity Badges .....	235
Popularity Rating and Calculation .....	235
Creating Popularity Badges .....	235
New Global Flags .....	238
Sorting by Popularity in the OPAC .....	238
Popularity Badge Example .....	239
46. Multilingual Search in Evergreen .....	242
Search Syntax .....	242
Advanced Search .....	243
Adding Subfields to the Index .....	243

47. Infrastructure Changes to Authority Browse .....	244
Backend functionality .....	244
Staff User Interface .....	244
48. Virtual Index Definitions .....	246
Keyword Virtual Index Definition .....	246
Configuring Virtual Index Definitions .....	246
Search Term Highlighting in Search Results .....	247
XI. Patron User Experience Administration .....	248
49. Introduction .....	250
50. SMS Text Messaging .....	251
Administrative Setup .....	251
Receiving Holds Notices via Text Message .....	254
Sending Copy Details via Text Message .....	255
51. Library Information Pages .....	258
XII. Designing your catalog .....	259
52. Introduction .....	262
53. Configuring and customizing the public interface .....	263
Locating the default template files .....	263
Mapping templates to URLs .....	263
How to override template files .....	264
Configuring the custom templates directory in Apache's eg.conf .....	264
Adjusting colors for your public interface .....	264
Adjusting fonts in your public interface .....	264
Media file locations in the public interface .....	265
Changing some text in the public interface .....	265
Adding translations to PO file .....	266
Adding and removing MARC fields from the record details display page .....	266
54. Setting the default physical location for your library environment .....	268
55. Setting a default language and adding optional languages .....	269
Updating translations in Evergreen using current translations from Launchpad .....	269
56. Change Date Format in Patron Account View .....	271
57. Including External Content in Your Public Interface .....	272
OpenLibrary .....	272
ChiliFresh .....	272
Content Café .....	273
Obalkyknih.cz .....	273
Google Analytics .....	274
NoveList .....	274
RefWorks .....	274
SFX OpenURL Resolver .....	275
Syndetic Solutions .....	275
Clear External/Added Content Cache .....	275
Configure a Custom Image for Missing Images .....	276
58. Including Locally Hosted Content in Your Public Interface .....	277
File Location and Format .....	277
Example .....	277
59. Adding Carousels to Your Public Catalog .....	279
CAROUSEL TYPES .....	279
CAROUSEL DEFINITIONS .....	281
CAROUSEL LIBRARY MAPPING .....	284
CAROUSELS - OTHER ADMINISTRATIVE FEATURES .....	285
XIII. Reports .....	288
60. Introduction .....	290
61. Folders .....	291

Creating Folders .....	291
Managing Folders .....	292
62. Creating Templates .....	293
Choosing Report Fields .....	293
Applying Filters .....	303
63. Generating Reports from Templates .....	308
Viewing and Editing Report Parameters .....	311
64. Viewing Report Output .....	313
65. Cloning Shared Templates .....	316
66. Running Recurring Reports .....	317
67. Template Terminology .....	318
Data Types .....	318
Field Transforms .....	319
68. Template Enhancements .....	321
Documentation URL .....	321
Field Hints .....	321
69. Exporting Report Templates Using phpPgAdmin .....	323
Dump the Entire Reports Template Table .....	323
Dump Data with an SQL Statement .....	323
XIV. Staff administration .....	325
70. Introduction .....	327
71. Describing your people .....	328
Setting the staff user's working location .....	328
Comparing approaches for managing permissions .....	329
Managing permissions in the staff client .....	330
Managing role-based permission groups in the staff client .....	331
Managing role-based permission groups in the database .....	334
72. User and Group Permissions .....	337
Staff Accounts .....	337
73. Work Log .....	341
Expanding the Work Log .....	341
74. Recent Staff Searches .....	342
Administrative Settings .....	342
Recent Staff Searches .....	343
XV. Other administration .....	344
75. Introduction .....	346
76. Notifications / Action Triggers .....	347
Introduction .....	347
Event Definitions .....	347
Creating Action Triggers .....	348
A. Attributions .....	353
B. Admonitions .....	355
C. Licensing .....	356
Index .....	357

# List of Tables

<u>14.1. Acquisitions</u> .....	<u>35</u>
<u>14.2. Booking and Cataloging</u> .....	<u>37</u>
<u>14.3. Circulation</u> .....	<u>39</u>
<u>14.4. Credit Card Processing</u> .....	<u>48</u>
<u>14.5. Finances</u> .....	<u>50</u>
<u>14.6. GUI: Graphic User Interface</u> .....	<u>53</u>
<u>14.7. Global</u> .....	<u>60</u>
<u>14.8. Holds</u> .....	<u>61</u>
<u>14.9. Library</u> .....	<u>64</u>
<u>14.10. OPAC</u> .....	<u>66</u>
<u>14.11. Offline and Program</u> .....	<u>69</u>
<u>14.12. Receipt Templates and SMS Text Message</u> .....	<u>71</u>
<u>14.13. Security</u> .....	<u>72</u>
<u>14.14. Self Check and Others</u> .....	<u>74</u>
<u>14.15. Vandelay</u> .....	<u>76</u>
<u>14.16. Data Types in the Library Settings Editor</u> .....	<u>76</u>
<u>31.1. Stock item statuses and default settings</u> .....	<u>175</u>
<u>38.1. Barcode Completion Fields</u> .....	<u>199</u>
<u>38.2. New Address Alert Fields</u> .....	<u>204</u>
<u>42.1. List of Receipts</u> .....	<u>223</u>



# Part I. Introduction

# Table of Contents

1. About This Documentation ..... 11

2. About Evergreen ..... 12

# Chapter 1. About This Documentation

This guide was produced by the Evergreen Documentation Interest Group (DIG), consisting of numerous volunteers from many different organizations. The DIG has drawn together, edited, and supplemented pre-existing documentation contributed by libraries and consortia running Evergreen that were kind enough to release their documentation into the creative commons. Please see the [Attributions](#) section for a full list of authors and contributing organizations. Just like the software it describes, this guide is a work in progress, continually revised to meet the needs of its users, so if you find errors or omissions, please let us know, by contacting the DIG facilitators at [docs@evergreen-ils.org](mailto:docs@evergreen-ils.org).

This guide to Evergreen is intended to meet the needs of system administrators at local libraries who use the staff client for their day-to-day work.

It is organized into Parts, Chapters, and Sections addressing key aspects of the software.

Copies of this guide can be accessed in PDF and HTML formats from <http://docs.evergreen-ils.org/>.

# Chapter 2. About Evergreen

Evergreen is an open source library automation software designed to meet the needs of the very smallest to the very largest libraries and consortia. Through its staff interface, it facilitates the management, cataloging, and circulation of library materials, and through its online public access interface it helps patrons find those materials.

The Evergreen software is freely licensed under the GNU General Public License, meaning that it is free to download, use, view, modify, and share. It has an active development and user community, as well as several companies offering migration, support, hosting, and development services.

The community's development requirements state that Evergreen must be:

- Stable, even under extreme load.
- Robust, and capable of handling a high volume of transactions and simultaneous users.
- Flexible, to accommodate the varied needs of libraries.
- Secure, to protect our patrons' privacy and data.
- User-friendly, to facilitate patron and staff use of the system.

Evergreen, which first launched in 2006 now powers over 544 libraries of every type – public, academic, special, school, and even tribal and home libraries – in over a dozen countries worldwide.

## Part II. Logging into Evergreen

# Table of Contents

[3. Registering a Workstation](#) ..... [15](#)  
[4. Basic Login](#) ..... [16](#)  
[5. Logging Out](#) ..... [17](#)

# Chapter 3. Registering a Workstation

Before logging into Evergreen, you must first register a workstation from your browser.



You will need the permissions to add workstations to your network. If you do not have these permissions, ask your system administrator for assistance.

1. When you login for the first time, you will arrive at a screen asking that you register your workstation

Please register a workstation.

Register a New Workstation For This Browser

BR1 ▾	Workstation Name	Register
-------	------------------	----------

---

Workstations Registered With This Browser

--

Use Now   Mark As Default   Remove

2. Create a unique workstation name.
3. Click Register
4. After confirming the new workstation is listed in the Workstations Registered With This Browser menu, click Use Now to return to the login page. Your newly-registered workstation should be selected by default on the login page.

# Chapter 4. Basic Login,

1. The default URL to log into the client is <https://localhost/eg/staff/login>
2. Enter your Username and Password.
3. Verify that the correct workstation is selected and click Sign In.



# Chapter 5. Logging Out

To log out of the client:

1. Click the menu button to the right of your user name in the top-right corner of the window.
2. Select Log Out



Exiting all browser windows will automatically log you out of the web client. If you only close the tab where the web client is loaded, you will remain logged in.

# Part III. Best Practices for Using the Browser

# Table of Contents

- 6. Pop-up Blockers ..... 20
- 7. Setting Browser Defaults for Web Client ..... 21
  - Setting the Web Client as the Home Page in Chrome ..... 21
  - Setting the Web Client as the Home Page in Firefox ..... 21
  - Turning off print headers and footers in Firefox ..... 21
  - Turning off print headers and footers in Chrome ..... 22
- 8. Tab Buttons and Keyboard Shortcuts ..... 23
  - Setting New Tab Behavior ..... 23

# Chapter 6. Pop-up Blockers

Before using the web client, be sure to disable pop-up blockers for your Evergreen system's domain.

- In Chrome, select Settings from the Chrome menu and click on Content settings in the advanced section. Select Popups and then add your domain to the Allowed list.
- In Firefox, select Preferences from the Firefox menu and then select the Content panel. Click the Exceptions button and add your domain to the Allowed Sites list.

# Chapter 7. Setting Browser Defaults for Web Client

To ensure that staff can easily get to the web client portal page on login without additional steps, you can set the browser's home page to default to the web client.

## Setting the Web Client as the Home Page in Chrome

1. In the top-right corner of your browser, click the Chrome menu.
2. Select Settings.
3. In the On startup section, select Open a specific page or set of pages.
4. Click the Set Pages link.
5. Add `https://localhost/eg/staff/` to the Enter URL box and click OK.

## Setting the Web Client as the Home Page in Firefox

1. In the top-right corner of your browser, click the menu button.
2. Click Options.
3. In the When Firefox starts: dropdown menu, select Show my home page.
4. In the Home Page box, add `https://localhost/eg/staff/` and click OK.

## Turning off print headers and footers in Firefox

If you are not using Hatch for printing, you will probably want to configure your browser so that Firefox does not add headers and footers to items printed on certain printers. For example, if you are printing spine labels, you likely will not want Firefox to add a date or URL to the margins of your label.

You can turn off these headers and footers using the following steps:

1. In the Firefox menu, click Print... to open the print preview screen.
2. Click the Page Setup... button.

3. Go to the Margins & Header/Footer tab.
4. Make sure that all dropdown menus are set to --blank--.

If you only want to turn off those headers and footers for a specific printer, use these steps:

1. In the Firefox address bar, type [about:config](#).
2. If a warning appears, click I accept the risk.
3. Type print\_header into this screen's search box.
4. Double-click on the relevant print\_headerleft, print\_headerright, and print\_headercenter entries in the grid.
5. Delete any existing data for that setting and click OK.
6. Type print\_footer into the screen's search box and repeat these steps for the footer settings.

## Turning off print headers and footers in Chrome

If you are not using Hatch for printing, you will probably want to configure your browser so that Chrome does not add headers and footers to items printed on certain printers. For example, if you are printing spine labels, you likely will not want Chrome to add a date or URL to the margins of your label.

You can turn off these headers and footers using the following steps:

1. In the Chrome menu, click Print... to open the print preview screen.
2. Click More Settings.
3. Uncheck Headers and Footers.

# Chapter 8. Tab Buttons and Keyboard Shortcuts

Now that the client will be loaded in a web browser, users can use browser-based tab controls and keyboard shortcuts to help with navigation. Below are some tips for browser navigation that can be used in Chrome and Firefox on Windows PCs.

- Use CTRL-T or click the browser's new tab button to open a new tab.
- Use CTRL-W or click the x in the tab to close the tab.
- Undo closing a tab by hitting CTRL-Shift-T.
- To open a link from the web client in a new tab, CTRL-click the link or right-click the link and select Open Link in New Tab. Using this method, you can also open options from the web client's dropdown menus in a new tab
- Navigate to the next tab using CTRL-Tab. Go to the previous tab with CTRL-Shift-Tab.

## Setting New Tab Behavior

Some users may want to automatically open the web client's portal page in a new tab. Neither Chrome nor Firefox will open your home page by default when you open a new tab. However, both browsers have optional add-ons that will allow you to set the browsers to automatically open the home page whenever opening a new tab. These add-ons may be useful for those libraries that want the new tab to open to the web client portal page.

# **Part IV. Configuring Evergreen for your workstation**



# Table of Contents

[9. Setting search defaults](#) ..... [26](#)  
[10. Turning off sounds](#) ..... [27](#)

# Chapter 9. Setting search defaults

- Go to Administration → Workstation.
- Use the dropdown menu to select an appropriate Default Search Library. The default search library setting determines what library is searched from the advanced search screen and portal page by default. You can override this setting when you are actually searching by selecting a different library. One recommendation is to set the search library to the highest point you would normally want to search.
- Use the dropdown menu to select an appropriate Preferred Library. The preferred library is used to show copies and electronic resource URIs regardless of the library searched. One recommendation is to set this to your home library so that local copies show up first in search results.
- Use the dropdown menu to select an appropriate Advanced Search Default Pane. Advanced search has secondary panes for Numeric and MARC Expert searching. You can change which one is loaded by default when opening a new catalog window here.

# Chapter 10. Turning off sounds

- Go to Administration → Workstation.
- Click the checkbox labeled Disable Sounds?

# Part V. Library Settings Editor

# Table of Contents

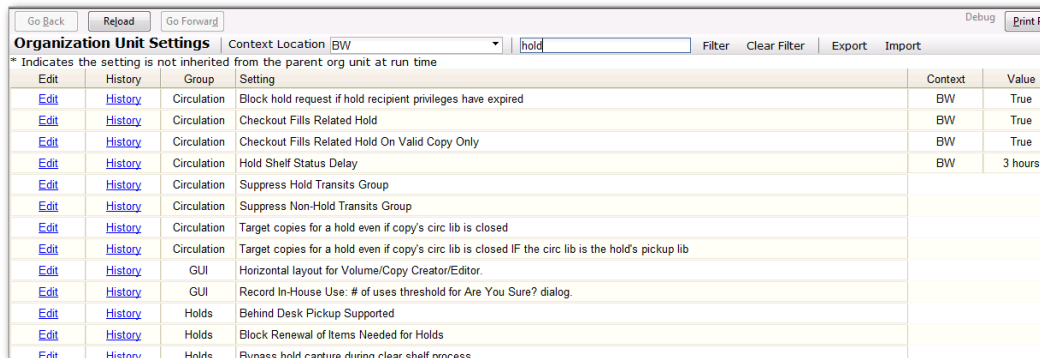
- [11. Introduction](#) ..... 30
- [12. Editing Library Settings](#) ..... 31
- [13. Exporting/Importing Library Settings](#) ..... 33
- [14. Settings Overview](#) ..... 35
  - [Data Types](#) ..... 76

# Chapter 11. Introduction

With the Library Settings Editor one can optionally customize Evergreen's behavior for a particular library or library system. For descriptions of available settings see the [Settings Overview](#) table below.

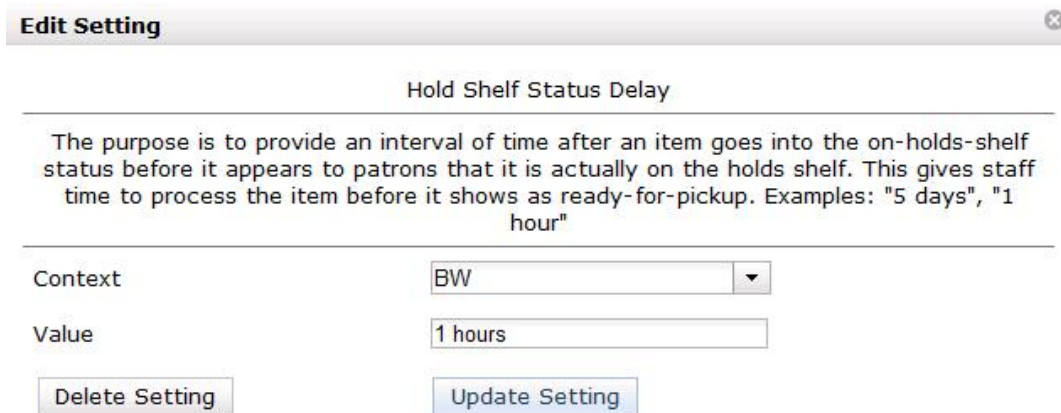
# Chapter 12. Editing Library Settings

1. To open the Library Settings Editor select Admin → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.
2. Settings having effects on the same function or module are grouped together. You may browse the list or search for the entry you want to edit. Type in your search term in the filter box. You may clear or re-apply the filter by clicking Clear Filter or Filter.



Edit	History	Group	Setting	Context	Value
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Block hold request if hold recipient privileges have expired	BW	True
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Checkout Fills Related Hold	BW	True
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Checkout Fills Related Hold On Valid Copy Only	BW	True
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Hold Shelf Status Delay	BW	3 hours
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Suppress Hold Transits Group		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Suppress Non-Hold Transits Group		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Target copies for a hold even if copy's circ lib is closed		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Circulation	Target copies for a hold even if copy's circ lib is closed IF the circ lib is the hold's pickup lib		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	GUI	Horizontal layout for Volume/Copy Creator/Editor.		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	GUI	Record In-House Use: # of uses threshold for Are You Sure? dialog.		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Holds	Behind Desk Pickup Supported		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Holds	Block Renewal of Items Needed for Holds		
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	Holds	Bypass hold capture during clear shelf process		

3. To edit an entry click Edit in the line.
4. Read the instruction in the pop-up window. Make the change. Click Update Setting to save the change. Click Delete Setting if you wish to delete it.



**Edit Setting**

Hold Shelf Status Delay

The purpose is to provide an interval of time after an item goes into the on-holds-shelf status before it appears to patrons that it is actually on the holds shelf. This gives staff time to process the item before it shows as ready-for-pickup. Examples: "5 days", "1 hour"

Context: BW

Value: 1 hours

Delete Setting Update Setting

5. Click History to view the previous values, if any, of a setting. You can revert back to an old value by clicking revert.

## History

### Hold Shelf Status Delay

Date Changed	Location	Original Value	New Value	
2012-06-01T15:59:49-0700	BW	"1 hours"	"5 hours"	<a href="#">Revert</a>
2012-06-01T15:59:42-0700	BW	"1 hours"	"1 hours"	<a href="#">Revert</a>
2012-06-01T15:41:08-0700	BW	"3 hours"	"1 hours"	<a href="#">Revert</a>

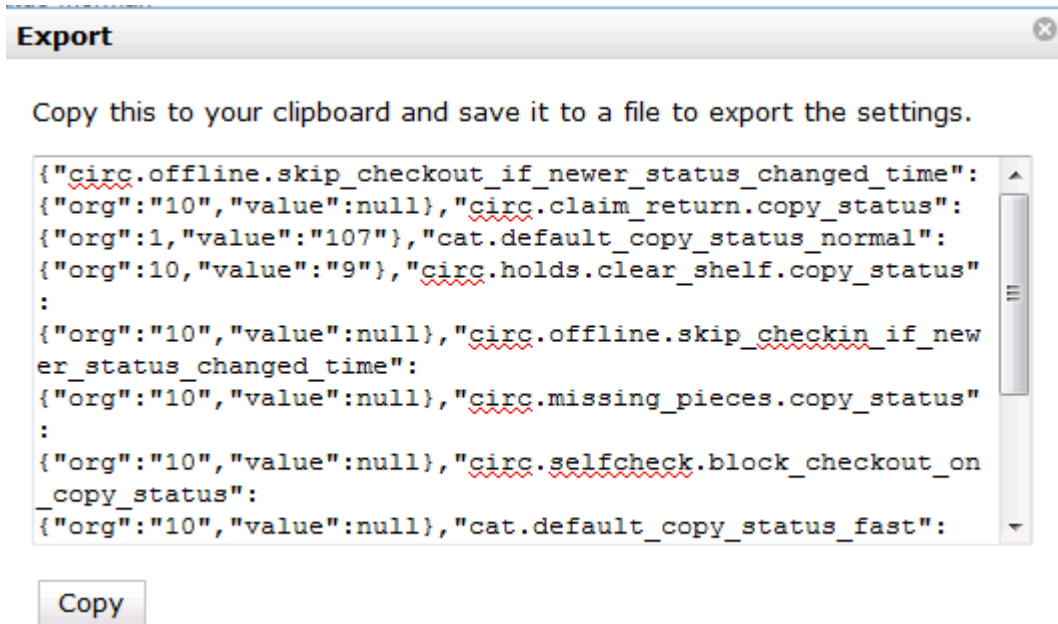


Please note that different settings may require different data formats, which are listed in the [Settings Overview](#) table. Refer to the [Data Types](#) table at the bottom of this page for more information.



# Chapter 13. Exporting/Importing Library Settings

1. To export library settings, click the Export button on the above Library Setting Editor screen. Click Copy in the pop-up window. Those settings displayed on the screen are copied to the clipboard. Paste the contents to a text editor, such as Notepad. Save the file on your computer.



2. To import library settings, click the Import button on the Library Settings Editor screen. Open your previously saved file and copy the contents. Click Paste in the pop-up window. Click Submit.

**Import**✕

Paste in your exported settings.

Paste

Submit

# Chapter 14. Settings Overview

The settings are grouped together in separate tables based on functions and modules, which are affected by the setting. They are in the same sequence as you see in the staff client. Each table describes the available settings in the group and shows which can be changed on a per-library basis. At the bottom is the table with a list of [data types](#) with details about acceptable settings values.

Table 14.1. Acquisitions

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Allow funds to be rolled over without bringing money along	Allow funds to be rolled over without bringing the money along. This makes money left in the old fund disappear, modeling its return to some outside entity.	True/False	
Allows patrons to create automatic holds from purchase requests.	Allows patrons to create automatic holds from purchase requests.	True/False	
Default circulation modifier	Sets the default circulation modifier for use in acquisitions.	Text	
Default copy location	Sets the default item location(shelving location) for use in acquisitions.	Selection list	
Fund Spending Limit for Block	When the amount remaining in the fund, including spent money and encumbrances, goes below this percentage, attempts to spend from the fund will be blocked.	Number	
Fund Spending Limit for Warning	When the amount remaining in the fund, including spent money and encumbrances, goes below this percentage, attempts to spend from the fund	Number	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	will result in a warning to the staff.		
Rollover Distribution Formulae Funds	During fiscal rollover, update distribution formulae to use new funds	True/False	
Set copy creator as receiver	When receiving an item in acquisitions, set the item "creator" to be the staff that received the item	True/False	
Temporary barcode prefix	Temporary barcode prefix added to temporary item records.	Text	
Temporary call number prefix	Temporary call number prefix	Text	
Upload Activate PO	Activate the purchase order by default during ACQ file upload	True/False	
Upload Create PO	Create a purchase order by default during ACQ file upload	True/False	
Upload Default Insufficient Quality Fall-Thru Profile	Default low-quality fall through profile used during ACQ file upload	Selection List	Match Only Merge and Full Overlay are the selections.
Upload Default Match Set	Default match set to use during ACQ file upload	Selection List	Can be set to authority test or biblio
Upload Default Merge Profile	Default merge profile to use during ACQ file upload	Selection List	Match Only Merge and Full Overlay are the selections.
Upload Default Min. Quality Ratio	Default minimum quality ratio used during ACQ file upload	Number	
Upload Default Provider	Default provider to use during ACQ file upload	Selection List	This list is populated by your Providers.
Upload Import Non Matching by Default	Import non-matching records by default during ACQ file upload	True/False	
Upload Load Items for Imported Records by Default	Load items for imported records by	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	default during ACQ file upload		
Upload Merge on Best Match by Default	Merge records on best match by default during ACQ file upload	True/False	
Upload Merge on Exact Match by Default	Merge records on exact match by default during ACQ file upload	True/False	
Upload Merge on Single Match by Default	Merge records on single match by default during ACQ file upload	True/False	

Table 14.2. Booking and Cataloging

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Allow email notify	Permit email notification when a reservation is ready for pick-up.	True/false	
Elbow room	Elbow room specifies how far in the future you must make a reservation on an item if that item will have to transit to reach its pick-up location. It secondarily defines how soon a reservation on a given item must start before the check-in process will opportunistically capture it for the reservation shelf.	Duration	
Default Classification Scheme	Defines the default classification scheme for new call numbers: 1 = Generic; 2 = Dewey; 3 = LC	Number	It has effect on call number sorting.
Default copy status (fast add)	Default status when an item is created using the "Fast Item Add" interface.	Selection list	Default: In process

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Default copy status (normal)	Default status when an item is created using the normal volume/copy creator interface.	Selection list	
Defines the control number identifier used in 003 and 035 fields		Text	
Delete bib if all items are deleted via Acquisitions line item cancellation.		True/False	
Delete volume with last copy	Automatically delete a volume when the last linked item is deleted.	True/False	Default TRUE
Maximum Parallel Z39.50 Batch Searches	The maximum number of Z39.50 searches that can be in-flight at any given time when performing batch Z39.50 searches	Number	
Maximum Z39.50 Batch Search Results	The maximum number of search results to retrieve and queue for each record + Z39 source during batch Z39.50 searches	Number	
Spine and pocket label font family	Set the preferred font family for spine and pocket labels. You can specify a list of fonts, separated by commas, in order of preference; the system will use the first font it finds with a matching name. For example, "Arial, Helvetica, serif".	Text	
Spine and pocket label font size	Set the default font size for spine and pocket labels	Number	
Spine and pocket label font weight	Set the preferred font weight for spine and pocket labels. You can specify "normal",	Text	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	"bold", "bolder", or "lighter".		
Spine label left margin	Set the left margin for spine labels in number of characters.	Number	
Spine label line width	Set the default line width for spine labels in number of characters. This specifies the boundary at which lines must be wrapped.	Number	
Spine label maximum lines	Set the default maximum number of lines for spine labels.	Number	

Table 14.3. Circulation

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Allow others to use patron account (privacy waiver)	Add a note to a user account indicating that specified people are allowed to place holds, pick up holds, check out items, or view borrowing history for that user account.	True/False	
Auto-extend grace periods	When enabled grace periods will auto-extend. By default this will be only when they are a full day or more and end on a closed date, though other options can alter this.	True/False	
Auto-extending grace periods extend for all closed dates	It works when the above setting "Auto-Extend Grace Periods" is set to TRUE. If enabled, when the grace period falls on a closed date(s), it will be extended past all closed dates that	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	intersect, but within the hard-coded limits (your library's grace period).		
Auto-extending grace periods include trailing closed dates	It works when the above setting "Auto-Extend Grace Periods" is set to TRUE. If enabled, grace periods will include closed dates that directly follow the last day of the grace period. A backdated check-in with effective date on the closed dates will assume the item is returned after hours on the last day of the grace period.	True/False	Useful when libraries' book drop equipped with AMH.
Block hold request if hold recipient privileges have expired		True/False	
Cap max fine at item price	This prevents the system from charging more than the item price in overdue fines	True/False	
Charge fines on overdue circulations when closed	When set to True, fines will be charged during scheduled closings and normal weekly closed days.	True/False	
Checkout fills related hold	When a patron checks out an item and they have no holds that directly target the item, the system will attempt to find a hold for the patron that could be fulfilled by the checked out item and fulfills it. On the Staff Client you may notice that when a patron checks out an item under a title on which	True/false	



Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	he/she has a hold, the hold will be treated as filled though the item has not been assigned to the patron's hold.		
Checkout fills related hold on valid copy only	When filling related holds on checkout only match on items that are valid for opportunistic capture for the hold. Without this set a Title or Volume hold could match when the item is not holdable. With this set only holdable items will match.	True/False	
Checkout auto renew age	When an item has been checked out for at least this amount of time, an attempt to check out the item to the patron that it is already checked out to will simply renew the circulation. If the checkout attempt is done within this time frame, Evergreen will prompt for choosing Renewing or Check-in then Checkout the item.	Duration	
Display copy alert for in-house-use	Setting to true for an organization will cause an alert to appear with the copy's alert message, if it has one, when recording in-house-use for the copy.	True/False	
Display copy location check in alert for in-house-use	Setting to true for an organization will cause an alert to display a message indicating that the item needs to be routed to its	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	location if the location has check in alert set to true.		
Do not change fines/fees on zero-balance LOST transaction	When an item has been marked lost and all fines/fees have been completely paid on the transaction, do not void or reinstate any fines/fees EVEN IF "Void lost item billing when returned" and/or "Void processing fee on lost item return" are enabled	True/False	
Do not include outstanding Claims Returned circulations in lump sum tallies in Patron Display.	In the Patron Display interface, the number of total active circulations for a given patron is presented in the Summary sidebar and underneath the Items Out navigation button. This setting will prevent Claims Returned circulations from counting toward these tallies.	True/False	
Hold shelf status delay	The purpose is to provide an interval of time after an item goes into the on-holds-shelf status before it appears to patrons that it is actually on the holds shelf. This gives staff time to process the item before it shows as ready-for-pick-up.	Duration	
Include Lost circulations in lump sum tallies in Patron Display.	In the Patron Display interface, the number of total active circulations for a given patron is presented in the	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	Summary sidebar and underneath the Items Out navigation button. This setting will include Lost circulations as counting toward these tallies.		
Invalid patron address penalty	When set, if a patron address is set to invalid, a penalty is applied.	True/False	
Item status for missing pieces	This is the Item Status to use for items that have been marked or scanned as having Missing Pieces. In the absence of this setting, the Damaged status is used.	Selection list	
Load patron from Checkout	When scanning barcodes into Checkout auto-detect if a new patron barcode is scanned and auto-load the new patron.	True/False	
Long-Overdue Check-In Interval Uses Last Activity Date	Use the long-overdue last-activity date instead of the due_date to determine whether the item has been checked out too long to perform long-overdue check-in processing. If set, the system will first check the last payment time, followed by the last billing time, followed by the due date. See also "Long-Overdue Max Return Interval"	True/False	
Long-Overdue Items Usable on Checkin	Long-overdue items are usable on checkin instead of going "home" first	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Long-Overdue Max Return Interval	Long-overdue check-in processing (voiding fees, re-instating overdues, etc.) will not take place for items that have been overdue for (or have last activity older than) this amount of time	Duration	
Lost check-in generates new overdues	Enabling this setting causes retroactive creation of not-yet-existing overdue fines on lost item check-in, up to the point of check-in time (or max fines is reached). This is different than "restore overdue on lost", because it only creates new overdue fines. Use both settings together to get the full complement of overdue fines for a lost item	True/False	
Lost items usable on checkin	Lost items are usable on checkin instead of going home first	True/false	
Max patron claims returned count	When this count is exceeded, a staff override is required to mark the item as claims returned.	Number	
Maximum visible age of User Trigger Events in Staff Interfaces	If this is unset, staff can view User Trigger Events regardless of age. When this is set to an interval, it represents the age of the oldest possible User Trigger Event that can be viewed.	Duration	
Minimum transit checkin interval	In-Transit items checked in this close to the transit start time	Duration	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	will be prevented from checking in		
Number of Retrievable Recent Patrons	Number of most recently accessed patrons that can be re-retrieved in the staff client. A value of 0 or less disables the feature. Defaults to 1.	Number	
Patron merge address delete	Delete address(es) of subordinate user(s) in a patron merge.	True/False	
Patron merge barcode delete	Delete barcode(s) of subordinate user(s) in a patron merge	True/False	
Patron merge deactivate card	Mark barcode(s) of subordinate user(s) in a patron merge as inactive.	True/False	
Patron Registration: Cloned patrons get address copy	If True, in the Patron editor, addresses are copied from the cloned user. If False, addresses are linked from the cloned user which can only be edited from the cloned user record.	True/False	
Printing: custom JavaScript file	Full URL path to a JavaScript File to be loaded when printing. Should implement a print_custom function for DOM manipulation. Can change the value of the do_print variable to false to cancel printing.	Text	
Require matching email address for password reset requests		True/False	
Restore Overdues on Long-Overdue Item Return		True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Restore overdue on lost item return	If true when a lost item is checked in overdue fines are charged (up to the maximum fines amount)	True/False	
Specify search depth for the duplicate patron check in the patron editor	When using the patron registration page, the duplicate patron check will use the configured depth to scope the search for duplicate patrons.	Number	
Suppress hold transits group	To create a group of libraries to suppress Hold Transits among them. All libraries in the group should use the same unique value. Leave it empty if transits should not be suppressed.	Text	
Suppress non-hold transits group	To create a group of libraries to suppress Non-Hold Transits among them. All libraries in the group should use the same unique value. Leave it empty if Non-Hold Transits should not be suppressed.	Text	
Suppress popup-dialogs during check-in.	When set to True, no pop-up window for exceptions on check-in. But the accompanying sound will be played.	True/False	
Target copies for a hold even if copy's circ lib is closed	If this setting is true at a given org unit or one of its ancestors, the hold targeter will target items from this org unit even if the org unit is closed (according to the Org Unit's closed dates.).	True/False	Set the value to True if you want to target items for holds at closed circulating libraries. Set the value to False, or leave it unset, if you do not want to enable this feature.

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Target copies for a hold even if copy's circ lib is closed IF the circ lib is the hold's pickup lib	If this setting is true at a given org unit or one of its ancestors, the hold targeter will target items from this org unit even if the org unit is closed (according to the Org Unit's closed dates) IF AND ONLY IF the item's circ lib is the same as the hold's pickup lib.	True/False	Set the value to True if you want to target items for holds at closed circulating libraries when the circulating library of the item and the pickup library of the hold are the same. Set the value to False, or leave it unset, if you do not want to enable this feature.
Truncate fines to max fine amount		True/False	Default:TRUE
Use Lost and Paid copy status	Use Lost and Paid copy status when lost or long overdue billing is paid	True/False	
Void Long-Overdue Item Billing When Returned		True/False	
Void Processing Fee on Long-Overdue Item Return		True/False	
Void longoverdue item billing when claims returned		True/False	
Void longoverdue item processing fee when claims returned		True/False	
Void lost item billing when claims returned		True/False	
Void lost item billing when returned	If true,when a lost item is checked in the item replacement bill (item price) is voided.	True/False	
Void lost item processing fee when claims returned	When an item is marked claims returned that was marked Lost, the item processing fee will be voided.	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Void lost max interval	Items that have been overdue this long will not result in lost charges being voided when returned, and the overdue fines will not be restored, either. Only applies if Circ: Void lost item billing or Circ: Void processing fee on lost item are true.	Duration	
Void processing fee on lost item return	Void processing fee when lost item returned	True/False	
Warn when patron account is about to expire	If set, the staff client displays a warning this number of days before the expiry of a patron account. Value is in number of days.	Duration	

Table 14.4. Credit Card Processing

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
AuthorizeNet login	Authorize.Net Username	Text	Obtain from Authorize.Net at <a href="http://www.authorize.net">http://www.authorize.net</a>
AuthorizeNet password	Authorize.Net Password	Text	Obtain from Authorize.Net
AuthorizeNet server	Required if using a developer/test account with Authorize.Net.	Text	Enter the server name from Authorize.Net. This is for use on test or developer account. If using live, leave blank.
AuthorizeNet test mode	Places Authorize.Net transactions in Test Mode	True/False	
Enable AuthorizeNet payments	This actually enables use of Authorize.Net	True/False	



Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Enable PayPal payments	This will enable use of PayPal payments through the staff client.	True/False	
Enable PayflowPro payments	This will enable the use of PayPal's Payflow Pro. This is not the same as PayPal.	True/False	
Enable Stripe payments	This will enable the use of the stripe credit card processing.	True/False	<a href="https://stripe.com">https://stripe.com</a>
Name default credit processor	This might be "AuthorizeNet", "PayPal", "PayflowPro", or "Stripe".	Text	This sets the company that you will use to process the credit cards.
PayPal login	Enter the PayPal login Username	Text	Obtain from PayPal
PayPal password	Enter the PayPal password.	Text	Obtain from PayPal.
PayPal signature	HASH Signature for PayPal	Text	Enter the HASH obtained from PayPal.
PayPal test mode	Places the PayPal credit card payments in test mode.	True/False	This sends the transactions to PayPal's development.paypal.com server for testing only.
PayflowPro login/merchant ID	Enter the PayflowPro Merchant ID	Text	Obtain from Payflow Pro Partner.
PayflowPro partner	Enter the Partner ID from your Payflow Partner	Text	This will be obtained from your Payflow Pro partner. This can be "PayPal" or "VeriSign", sometimes others.
PayflowPro password	Password for PayflowPro	Text	Obtain from Payflow Pro Partner
PayflowPro test mode	Place Payflow Pro in test mode.	True/False	Do not really process transactions, but stay in test mode - uses pilot-payflowpro.paypal.com instead of the usual host.
PayflowPro vendor	Currently the same as the Payflow Pro login.	Text	Obtain from Payflow Pro partner.

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Stripe publishable key	Publishable API Key from stripe.	Text	
Stripe secret key	Secret API key from stripe.	Text	

Table 14.5. Finances

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Allow credit card payments	If enabled, patrons will be able to pay fines accrued at this location via credit card.	True/False	
Charge item price when marked damaged	If true Evergreen bills item price to the last patron who checked out the damaged item. Staff receive an alert with patron information and must confirm the billing.	True/false	
Charge lost on zero	If set to True, default item price will be charged when an item is marked lost even though the price in item record is 0.00 (same as no price). If False, only processing fee, if used, will be charged.	True/false	
Charge processing fee for damaged items	Optional processing fee billed to last patron who checked out the damaged item. Staff receive an alert with patron information and must confirm the billing.	Number(Dollar)	Disabled when set to 0
Default item price	Replacement charge for lost items if price is unset in the Copy Editor. Does not apply if item price is set to \$0	Number(dollars)	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Disable Patron Credit	Do not allow patrons to accrue credit or pay fines/fees with accrued credit	True/False	
Leave transaction open when long overdue balance equals zero	Leave transaction open when long-overdue balance equals zero. This leaves the long-overdue copy on the patron record when it is paid	True/False	
Leave transaction open when lost balance equals zero	Leave transaction open when lost balance equals zero. This leaves the lost item on the patron record when it is paid	True/False	
Long-Overdue Materials Processing Fee	The amount charged in addition to item price when an item is marked Long-Overdue	Number	Currency
Lost materials processing fee	The amount charged in addition to item price when an item is marked lost.	Number	Currency
Maximum Item Price	When charging for lost items, limit the charge to this as a maximum.	Number	Currency
Minimum Item Price	When charging for lost items, charge this amount as a minimum.	Number	Currency
Negative Balance Interval (DEFAULT)	Amount of time after which no negative balances (refunds) are allowed on circulation bills. The "Prohibit negative balance on bills" setting must also be set to "true".	Duration	
Negative Balance Interval for Lost	Amount of time after which no negative balances (refunds) are allowed on bills for lost/long overdue materials. The "Prohibit	Duration	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	negative balance on bills for lost materials" setting must also be set to "true".		
Negative Balance Interval for Overdues	Amount of time after which no negative balances (refunds) are allowed on bills for overdue materials. The "Prohibit negative balance on bills for overdue materials" setting must also be set to "true".	Duration	
Prohibit negative balance on bills (Default)	Default setting to prevent negative balances (refunds) on circulation related bills. Set to "true" to prohibit negative balances at all times or, when used in conjunction with an interval setting, to prohibit negative balances after a set period of time.	True/False	
Prohibit negative balance on bills for lost materials	Prevent negative balances (refunds) on bills for lost/long overdue materials. Set to "true" to prohibit negative balances at all times or, when used in conjunction with an interval setting, to prohibit negative balances after an interval of time.	True/False	
Prohibit negative balance on bills for overdue materials	Prevent negative balances (refunds) on bills for lost/long overdue materials. Set to "true" to prohibit negative balances at all times or, when used in conjunction with	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	an interval setting, to prohibit negative balances after an interval of time.		
Void Overdue Fines When Items are Marked Long-Overdue	If true overdue fines are voided when an item is marked Long-Overdue	True/False	
Void overdue fines when items are marked lost	If true overdue fines are voided when an item is marked lost	True/False	

Table 14.6. GUI: Graphic User Interface

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Alert on empty bib records	Alert staff when the last item for a record is being deleted.	True/False	
Button bar	If TRUE, the staff client button bar appears by default on all workstations registered to your library; staff can override this setting at each login.	True/False	
Cap results in Patron Search at this number.	The maximum number of results returned per search. If 100 is set up here, any search will return 100 records at most.	Number	
Default Country for New Addresses in Patron Editor	This is the default Country for new addresses in the patron editor.	Text	
Default hotkeyset	Default Hotkeyset for clients (filename without the .keyset). Examples: Default, Minimal, and None	Text	Individual workstations' default overrides this setting.
Default ident type for patron registration	This is the default Ident Type for new users in the patron editor.	Selection list	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Default showing suggested patron registration fields	Instead of All fields, show just suggested fields in patron registration by default.	True/False	
Disable the ability to save list column configurations locally.	GUI: Disable the ability to save list column configurations locally. If set, columns may still be manipulated, however, the changes do not persist. Also, existing local configurations are ignored if this setting is true.	True/False	
Enable Experimental Angular Staff Catalog	Adds an entry to the Web client's search menu so that staff can experiment with the new Angular Staff Catalog.	True/False	
Example for Day_phone field on patron registration	The example on validation on the Day_phone field in patron registration.	Text	
Example for Email field on patron registration	The example on validation on the Email field in patron registration.	Text	
Example for Evening-phone on patron registration	The example on validation on the Evening-phone field in patron registration.	Text	
Example for Other-phone on patron registration	The example on validation on the Other-phone field in patron registration.	Text	
Example for phone fields on patron registration	The example on validation on phone fields in patron registration. Applies to all phone fields without their own setting.	Text	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Example for Postal Code field on patron registration	The example on validation on the Postal Code field in patron registration.	Text	
Format Dates with this pattern.	Format Dates with this pattern (examples: "yyyy-MM-dd" for "2010-04-26", "MMM d, yyyy" for "Apr 26, 2010"). Formats are effective in display (not editing) area.	Text	
Format Times with this pattern.	Format Times with this pattern (examples: "h:m:s.SSS a z" for "2:07:20.666 PM Eastern Daylight Time", "HH:mm" for "14:07"). Formats are effective in display (not editing) area.	Text	
GUI: Hide these fields within the Item Attribute Editor.	Sets which fields in the Item Attribute Editor to hide in the staff client.	Text	This is useful to hide attributes that are not used.
Horizontal layout for Volume/Copy Creator/Editor.	The main entry point for this interface is in Holdings Maintenance, Actions for Selected Rows, Edit Item Attributes / Call Numbers / Replace Barcodes. This setting changes the top and bottom panes (if FALSE) for that interface into left and right panes (if TRUE).	True/False	
Idle timeout	If you want staff client windows to be minimized after a certain amount of system idle time, set this to the number of seconds of idle time that you want to allow before minimizing	Number	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	(requires staff client restart).		
Items Out Claims Returned display setting	Value is a numeric code, describing which list the circulation should appear while checked out and whether the circulation should continue to appear in the bottom list, when checked in with outstanding fines. 1 = top list, bottom list. 2 = bottom list, bottom list. 5 = top list, do not display. 6 = bottom list, do not display.	Number	
Items Out Long-Overdue display setting	Value is a numeric code, describing which list the circulation should appear while checked out and whether the circulation should continue to appear in the bottom list, when checked in with outstanding fines. 1 = top list, bottom list. 2 = bottom list, bottom list. 5 = top list, do not display. 6 = bottom list, do not display.	Number	
Items Out Lost display setting	Value is a numeric code, describing which list the circulation should appear while checked out and whether the circulation should continue to appear in the bottom list, when checked in with outstanding fines. 1 = top list, bottom list. 2 = bottom list,	Number	



Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	bottom list. 5 = top list, do not display. 6 = bottom list, do not display.		
Max user activity entries to retrieve (staff client)	Sets the maximum number of recent user activity entries to retrieve for display in the staff client.	Number	
Maximum previous checkouts displayed	The maximum number of previous circulations the staff client will display when investigating item details	Number	
Patron circulation summary is horizontal		True/False	
Record in-house use: # of uses threshold for Are You Sure? dialog.	In the Record In-House Use interface, a submission attempt will warn if the # of uses field exceeds the value of this setting.	Number	
Record In-House Use: Maximum # of uses allowed per entry.	The # of uses entry in the Record In-House Use interface may not exceed the value of this setting.	Number	
Regex for barcodes on patron registration	The Regular Expression for validation on barcodes in patron registration.	Regular Expression	
Regex for Day_phone field on patron registration		Regular expression	
Regex for Email field on patron registration	The Regular Expression on validation on the Email field in patron registration.	Regular expression	
Regex for Evening-phone on patron registration	The Regular Expression on validation on the Evening-phone field in patron registration.	Regular expression	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Regex for Other-phone on patron registration	The Regular Expression on validation on the Other-phone field in patron registration.	Regular expression	
Regex for phone fields on patron registration	The Regular Expression on validation on phone fields in patron registration. Applies to all phone fields without their own setting.	Regular expression	<code>^(?: (?: \+?1\s*(?: [.-]\s*)?)?(?: \(\s*([2-9]1[02-9]   [2-9][02-8]1   [2-9][02-8][02-9])\s*\)  ([2-9]1[02-9]   [2-9][02-8]1   [2-9][02-8][02-9]))\s*(?: [.-]\s*)?)? ([2-9]1[02-9]   [2-9][02-9]1   [2-9][02-9]{2})\s*(?: [.-]\s*)?([0-9]{4}) (?: \s*(?:# x\.? ext\.? extension)\s*(\d+))?)?\$</code> is a US phone number
Regex for Postal Code field on patron registration	The Regular Expression on validation on the Postal Code field in patron registration.	Regular expression	
Require at least one address for Patron Registration	Enforces a requirement for having at least one address for a patron during registration. If set to False, you need to delete the empty address before saving the record. If set to True, deletion is not allowed.	True/False	
Require XXXXX field on patron registration	The XXXXX field will be required on the patron registration screen.	True/False	XXXXX can be Country, State, Day-phone, Evening-phone, Other-phone, DOB, Email, or Prefix.
Require staff initials for entry/edit of patron standing penalties and messages.	Appends staff initials and edit date into patron standing	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	penalties and messages.		
Require staff initials for entry/edit of patron notes.	Appends staff initials and edit date into patron note content.	True/False	
Require staff initials for entry/edit of copy notes.	Appends staff initials and edit date into copy note content.	True/False	
Show billing tab first when bills are present	If true accounts for patrons with bills will open to the billing tab instead of check out	True/false	
Show XXXXX field on patron registration	The XXXXX field will be shown on the patron registration screen. Showing a field makes it appear with required fields even when not required. If the field is required this setting is ignored.	True/False	
Suggest XXXXX field on patron registration	The XXXXX field will be suggested on the patron registration screen. Suggesting a field makes it appear when suggested fields are shown. If the field is shown or required this setting is ignored.	True/False	
Juvenile account requires parent/guardian	When this setting is set to true, a value will be required in the patron editor when the juvenile flag is active.	True/False	
Toggle off the patron summary sidebar after first view.	When true, the patron summary sidebar will collapse after a new patron sub-interface is selected.	True/False	
URL for remote directory containing list column settings.	The format and naming convention for the files found in this directory match those in the local settings directory	Text	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	for a given workstation. An administrator could create the desired settings locally and then copy all the <code>tree_columns_for_*</code> files to the remote directory.		
Uncheck bills by default in the patron billing interface	Uncheck bills by default in the patron billing interface, and focus on the Uncheck All button instead of the Payment Received field.	True/False	
Unified Volume/Item Creator/Editor	If True, combines the Volume/Copy Creator and Item Attribute Editor in some instances.	True/False	
Work Log: maximum actions logged	Maximum entries for "Most Recent Staff Actions" section of the Work Log interface.	Number	
Work Log: maximum patrons logged	Maximum entries for "Most Recently Affected Patrons..." section of the Work Log interface.	Number	

Table 14.7. Global

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Allow multiple username changes	If enabled (and Lock Usernames is not set) patrons will be allowed to change their username when it does not look like a barcode. Otherwise username changing in the OPAC will only be allowed when the patron's	True/False	Default TRUE.

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	username looks like a barcode.		
Global default locale		Number	
Lock Usernames	If enabled username changing via the OPAC will be disabled.	Default FALSE	
Password format	Defines acceptable format for OPAC account passwords	Regular expression	Default requires that passwords "be at least 7 characters in length, contain at least one letter (a-z/A-Z), and contain at least one number.
Patron barcode format	Defines acceptable format for patron barcodes	Regular expression	
Patron username format	Regular expression defining the patron username format, used for patron registration and self-service username changing only	Regular expression	

Table 14.8. Holds

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Behind desk pickup supported	If a branch supports both a public holds shelf and behind-the-desk pickups, set this value to true. This gives the patron the option to enable behind-the-desk pickups for their holds by selecting Hold is behind Circ Desk flag in patron record.	True/False	
Best-hold selection sort order	Defines the sort order of holds when selecting a hold to fill using a given copy at capture time	Selection list	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Block renewal of items needed for holds	When an item could fulfill a hold, do not allow the current patron to renew	True/False	
Cancelled holds display age	Show all cancelled holds that were cancelled within this amount of time	Duration	
Cancelled holds display count	How many cancelled holds to show in patron holds interfaces	Number	
Clear shelf copy status	Any copies that have not been put into reshelving, in-transit, or on-holds-shelf (for a new hold) during the clear shelf process will be put into this status. This is basically a purgatory status for copies waiting to be pulled from the shelf and processed by hand	Selection list	
Default estimated wait	When predicting the amount of time a patron will be waiting for a hold to be fulfilled, this is the default estimated length of time to assume an item will be checked out.	Duration	
Default hold shelf expire interval	Hold Shelf Expiry Time is calculated and inserted into hold record based on this interval when capturing a hold.	Duration	
Expire alert interval	Time before a hold expires at which to send an email notifying the patron	Duration	
Expire interval	Amount of time until an unfulfilled hold expires	Duration	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
FIFO	Force holds to a more strict First-In, First-Out capture. Default is SAVE-GAS, which gives priority to holds with pickup location the same as checkin library.	True/False	Applies only to multi-branch libraries. Default is SAVE-GAS.
Hard boundary		Number	
Hard stalling interval		Duration	
Has local copy alert	If there is an available item at the requesting library that could fulfill a hold during hold placement time, alert the patron.	True/False	
Has local copy block	If there is an available item at the requesting library that could fulfill a hold during hold placement time, do not allow the hold to be placed.	True/False	
Max foreign-circulation time	Time a item can spend circulating away from its circ lib before returning there to fill a hold	Duration	For multi-branch libraries.
Maximum library target attempts	When this value is set and greater than 0, the system will only attempt to find a item at each possible branch the configured number of times	Number	For multi-branch libraries.
Minimum estimated wait	When predicting the amount of time a patron will be waiting for a hold to be fulfilled, this is the minimum estimated length of time to assume an item will be checked out.	Duration	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Org unit target weight	Org Units can be organized into hold target groups based on a weight. Potential items from org units with the same weight are chosen at random.	Number	
Reset request time on un-cancel	When a hold is uncanceled, reset the request time to push it to the end of the queue	True/False	
Skip for hold targeting	When true, don't target any items at this org unit for holds	True/False	
Soft boundary	Holds will not be filled by items outside this boundary if there are holdable items within it.	Number	
Soft stalling interval	For this amount of time, holds will not be opportunistically captured at non-pickup branches.	Duration	For multiple branch libraries
Use Active Date for age protection	When calculating age protection rules use the Active date instead of the Creation Date.	True/False	Default TRUE
Use weight-based hold targeting	Use library weight based hold targeting	True/False	

Table 14.9. Library

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Change reshelving status interval	Amount of time to wait before changing an item from "Reshelving" status to "available"	Duration	The default is at midnight each night for items with "Reshelving" status for over 24 hours.
Claim never checked out: mark copy as missing	When a circ is marked as claims-never-checked-out, mark the item as missing	True/False	



Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Claim return copy status	Claims returned copies are put into this status. Default is to leave the copy in the Checked Out status	Selection list	
Courier code	Courier Code for the library. Available in transit slip templates as the %courier_code% macro.	Text	
Juvenile age threshold	Upper cut-off age for patrons to be considered juvenile, calculated from date of birth in patron accounts	Duration (years)	
Library information URL (such as "http://example.com/about.html")	URL for information on this library, such as contact information, hours of operation, and directions. Use a complete URL, such as "http://example.com/hours.html".	Text	
Mark item damaged voids overdues	When an item is marked damaged, overdue fines on the most recent circulation are voided.	True/False	
Pre-cat item circ lib	Override the default circ lib of "here" with a pre-configured circ lib for pre-cat items. The value should be the "shortname" (aka policy name) of the org unit	Text	
Telephony: Arbitrary line(s) to include in each notice callfile	This overrides lines from opensrf.xml. Line(s) must be valid for your target server and platform (e.g. Asterisk 1.4).	Text	

Table 14.10. OPAC

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Allow Patron Self-Registration	Allow patrons to self-register, creating pending user accounts	True/False	
Allow pending addresses	If true patrons can edit their addresses in the OPAC. Changes must be approved by staff	True/False	
Auto-Override Permitted Hold Blocks (Patrons)	This will allow patrons with the permission "HOLD_ITEM_CHECKED_OUT.override" to automatically override permitted holds.	True/False	When a patron places a hold in the OPAC that fails, and the patron has the permission to override the failed hold, this automatically overrides the failed hold rather than requiring the patron to manually override the hold. Default is False.
Jump to details on 1 hit (OPAC)	When a search yields only 1 result, jump directly to the record details page. This setting only affects the public OPAC	True/False	
Jump to details on 1 hit (staff client)	When a search yields only 1 result, jump directly to the record details page. This setting only affects the PAC within the staff client	True/False	
OPAC: Number of staff client saved searches to display on left side of results and record details pages	If unset, the OPAC (only when wrapped in the staff client!) will default to showing you your ten most recent searches on the left side of the results and record details pages. If you actually don't want to see this feature at all, set this value to zero at the top of your organizational tree.	Number	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
OPAC: Org Unit is not a hold pickup library	If set, this org unit will not be offered to the patron as an option for a hold pickup location. This setting has no affect on searching or hold targeting.	True/False	
Org unit hiding depth	This will hide certain org units in the public OPAC if the Original Location (url param "ol") for the OPAC inherits this setting. This setting specifies an org unit depth, that together with the OPAC Original Location determines which section of the Org Hierarchy should be visible in the OPAC. For example, a stock Evergreen installation will have a 3-tier hierarchy (Consortium/System/Branch), where System has a depth of 1 and Branch has a depth of 2. If this setting contains a depth of 1 in such an installation, then every library in the System in which the Original Location belongs will be visible, and everything else will be hidden. A depth of 0 will effectively make every org visible. The embedded OPAC in the staff client ignores this setting.	Number	
Paging shortcut links for OPAC Browse	The characters in this string, in order, will be used as shortcut links for quick	Text	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	paging in the OPAC browse interface. Any sequence surrounded by asterisks will be taken as a whole label, not split into individual labels at the character level, but only the first character will serve as the basis of the search.		
Patron Self-Reg. Display Timeout	Number of seconds to wait before reloading the patron self-registration interface to clear sensitive data	Duration	
Patron Self-Reg. Expire Interval	If set, this is the amount of time a pending user account will be allowed to sit in the database. After this time, the pending user information will be purged	Duration	
Payment history age limit	The OPAC should not display payments by patrons that are older than any interval defined here.	Duration	
Tag Circulated Items in Results	When a user is both logged in and has opted in to circulation history tracking, turning on this setting will cause previous (or currently) circulated items to be highlighted in search results	True/False	
Tag Circulated Items in Results	When a user is both logged in and has opted in to circulation history tracking, turning on this setting will cause previous (or currently) circulated items to be highlighted in search results.	True/False	Default TRUE

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Use fully compressed serial holdings	Show fully compressed serial holdings for all libraries at and below the current context unit	True/False	
Warn patrons when adding to a temporary book list	Present a warning dialogue when a patron adds a book to the temporary book list.	True/False	

Table 14.11. Offline and Program

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Skip offline checkin if newer item Status Changed Time.	Skip offline checkin transaction (raise exception when processing) if item Status Changed Time is newer than the recorded transaction time. WARNING: The Reshelving to Available status rollover will trigger this.	True/False	
Skip offline checkout if newer item Status Changed Time.	Skip offline checkout transaction (raise exception when processing) if item Status Changed Time is newer than the recorded transaction time. WARNING: The Reshelving to Available status rollover will trigger this.	True/False	
Skip offline renewal if newer item Status Changed Time.	Skip offline renewal transaction (raise exception when processing) if item Status Changed Time is newer than the recorded transaction time. WARNING: The Reshelving to Available	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	status rollover will trigger this.		
Disable automatic print attempt type list	Disable automatic print attempts from staff client interfaces for the receipt types in this list. Possible values: "Checkout", "Bill Pay", "Hold Slip", "Transit Slip", and "Hold/Transit Slip". This is different from the Auto-Print checkbox in the pertinent interfaces in that it disables automatic print attempts altogether, rather than encouraging silent printing by suppressing the print dialogue. The Auto-Print checkbox in these interfaces have no effect on the behavior for this setting. In the case of the Hold, Transit, and Hold/Transit slips, this also suppresses the alert dialogues that precede the print dialogue (the ones that offer Print and Do Not Print as options).	Text	
Retain empty bib records	Retain a bib record even when all attached copies are deleted	True/False	
Sending email address for patron notices	This email address is for automatically generated patron notices (e.g. email overdues, email holds notification). It is good practice to set up a generic account, like <a href="mailto:info@nameofyourlibrary.org">info@nameofyourlibrary.org</a> ,	Text	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	so that one person's individual email inbox doesn't get cluttered with emails that were not delivered.		

Table 14.12. Receipt Templates and SMS Text Message

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Content of alert_text include	Text/HTML/Macros to be inserted into receipt templates in place of %INCLUDE(alert_text)%	Text	
Content of event_text include	Text/HTML/Macros to be inserted into receipt templates in place of %INCLUDE(event_text)%	Text	
Content of footer_text include	Text/HTML/Macros to be inserted into receipt templates in place of %INCLUDE(footer_text)%	Text	
Content of header_text include	Text/HTML/Macros to be inserted into receipt templates in place of %INCLUDE(header_text)%	Text	
Content of notice_text include	Text/HTML/Macros to be inserted into receipt templates in place of %INCLUDE(notice_text)%	Text	
Disable auth requirement for texting call numbers.	Disable authentication requirement for sending call number information via SMS from the OPAC.	True/False	
Enable features that send SMS text messages.	Current features that use SMS include hold-ready-for-pickup notifications and a "Send Text" action for call numbers in the OPAC. If this setting is not enabled, the SMS options will not be offered to the	True/False	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	user. Unless you are carefully silo-ing patrons and their use of the OPAC, the context org for this setting should be the top org in the org hierarchy, otherwise patrons can trample their user settings when jumping between orgs.		

Table 14.13. Security

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Default level of patrons' internet access	Enter numbers 1 (Filtered), 2 (Unfiltered), or 3 (No Access)	Number	
Maximum concurrently active self-serve password reset requests	Prevent the creation of new self-serve password reset requests until the number of active requests drops back below this number.	Number	
Maximum concurrently active self-serve password reset requests per user	When a user has more than this number of concurrently active self-serve password reset requests for their account, prevent the user from creating any new self-serve password reset requests until the number of active requests for the user drops back below this number.	Number	
OPAC Inactivity Timeout (in seconds)	Number of seconds of inactivity before OPAC accounts are	Number	



Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	automatically logged out.		
Obscure the Date of Birth field	When true, the Date of Birth column in patron lists will default to Not Visible, and in the Patron Summary sidebar the value will display as unless the field label is clicked.	True/False	
Offline: Patron usernames allowed	During offline circulations, allow patrons to identify themselves with usernames in addition to barcode. For this setting to work, a barcode format must also be defined	True/False	
Patron opt-in boundary	This determines at which depth above which patrons must be opted in, and below which patrons will be assumed to be opted in.	Text	
Patron opt-in default	This is the default depth at which a patron is opted in; it is calculated as an org unit relative to the current workstation.	Text	
Patron: password from phone #	If true the last 4 digits of the patron's phone number is the password for new accounts (password must still be changed at first OPAC login)	True/false	
Persistent login duration	How long a persistent login lasts, e.g. 2 weeks	Duration	
Self-serve password reset request time-to-live	Length of time (in seconds) a self-serve	Duration	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	password reset request should remain active.		
Staff login inactivity timeout (in seconds)	Number of seconds of inactivity before staff client prompts for login and password.	Number	

Table 14.14. Self Check and Others

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Audio Alerts	Use audio alerts for selfcheck events.	True/false	
Block copy checkout status	List of copy status IDs that will block checkout even if the generic COPY_NOT_AVAILABLE event is overridden.	Number	Look up copy status ID from Server Admin.
Patron login timeout (in seconds)	Number of seconds of inactivity before the patron is logged out of the selfcheck interface.	Duration	
Pop-up alert for errors	If true, checkout/renewal errors will cause a pop-up window in addition to the on-screen message.	True/False	
Require Patron Password	If true, patrons will be required to enter their password in addition to their username/barcode to log into the selfcheck interface.	True/False	This replaced "Require patron password"
Require patron password		True/False	This was replaced by "Require Patron Password" and is currently invalid.
Selfcheck override events list	List of checkout/renewal events that the selfcheck interface should automatically override instead of alerting	Text	

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
	and stopping the transaction.		
Workstation Required	All selfcheck stations must use a workstation.	True/False	
Default display grouping for serials distributions presented in the OPAC.	Default display grouping for serials distributions presented in the OPAC. This can be "enum" or "chron".	Text	
Previous issuance copy location	When a serial issuance is received, copies (units) of the previous issuance will be automatically moved into the configured shelving location.	Selection List	
Maximum redirect lookups	For URLs returning 3XX redirects, this is the maximum number of redirects we will follow before giving up.	Number	
Maximum wait time (in seconds) for a URL to lookup	If we exceed the wait time, the URL is marked as a "timeout" and the system moves on to the next URL	Duration	
Number of URLs to test in parallel	URLs are tested in batches. This number defines the size of each batch and it directly relates to the number of back-end processes performing URL verification.	Number	
Number of seconds to wait between URL test attempts	Throttling mechanism for batch URL verification runs. Each running process will wait this number of seconds after a URL test before performing the next.	Duration	

Table 14.15. Vandelay

Setting	Description	Data type	Notes
Default Record Match Set	Sets the Default Record Match set	Selection List	Populated by the Vandelay Record Match Sets
Vandelay Default Barcode Prefix	Apply this prefix to any auto-generated item barcode	Text	
Vandelay Default Call Number Prefix	Apply this prefix to any auto-generated item call numbers.	Text	
Vandelay Default Circulation Modifier	Default circulation modifier value for imported items	Selection List	Populated by your Circulation Modifiers.
Vandelay Default Copy Location	Default copy location value for imported items	Selection List	Populated from Shelving Locations
Vandelay Generate Default Barcodes	Auto-generate default item barcodes when no item barcode is present	True/False	
Vandelay Generate Default Call Numbers	Auto-generate default item call numbers when no item call number is present	True/False	These are pulled from the MARC Record.

## Data Types

Acceptable formats for each setting type are listed below. Quotation marks are never required when updating settings in the staff client.

Table 14.16. Data Types in the Library Settings Editor

Data type	Formatting
True/False	Boolean True/False drop down
Number	Enter a numerical value (decimals allowed in price settings)
Duration	Enter a number followed by a space and any of the following units: minutes, hours, days, months (30 minutes, 2 days, etc)
Selection list	Choose from a drop-down list of options (e.g. copy status, copy location)

Data type	Formatting
Text	Free text

# **Part VI. Organizational Unit administration**

# Table of Contents

- 15. Describing your organization..... 80
  - Organization Unit Types..... 80
    - Create and edit Organization Unit Types..... 80
  - Organizational Units..... 80
    - Remove or edit default Organizational Units..... 81
    - Create and edit Organizational Units..... 81
    - Organizational Unit data..... 81
    - After Changing Organization Unit Data..... 81
  - Standing Penalties..... 81

# Chapter 15. Describing your organization

Your Evergreen system is almost ready to go. You'll need to add each of the libraries that will be using your Evergreen system. If you're doing this for a consortium, you'll have to add your consortium as a whole, and all the libraries and branches that are members of the consortium. In this chapter, we'll talk about how to get the Evergreen system to see all your libraries, how to set each one up, and how to edit all the details of each one.

## Organization Unit Types

The term Organization Unit Types refers to levels in the hierarchy of your library system(s). Examples could include: All-Encompassing Consortium, Library System, Branch, Bookmobile, Sub-Branch, etc.

You can add or remove organizational unit types, and rename them as needed to match the organizational hierarchy that matches the libraries using your installation of Evergreen. Organizational unit types should never have proper names since they are only generic types.

When working with configuration, settings, and permissions, it is very important to be careful of the Organization Unit Context Location - this is the organizational unit to which the configuration settings are being applied. If, for example, a setting is applied at the Consortium context location, all child units will inherit that setting. If a specific branch location is selected, only that branch and its child units will have the setting applied. The levels of the hierarchy to which settings can be applied are often referred to in terms of "depth" in various configuration interfaces. In a typical hierarchy, the consortium has a depth of 0, the system is 1, the branch is 2, and any bookmobiles or sub-branches is 3.

## Create and edit Organization Unit Types

1. Open Administration > Server Administration > Organization Types.
2. In the left panel, expand the Organization Unit Types hierarchy.
3. Click on a organization type to edit the existing type or to add a new organization unit.
4. A form opens in the right panel, displaying the data for the selected organization unit.
5. Edit the fields as required and click Save.

To create a new dependent organization unit, click New Child. The new child organization unit will appear in the left panel list below the parent. Highlight the new unit and edit the data as needed, click Save

## Organizational Units

Organizational Units are the specific instances of the organization unit types that make up your library's hierarchy. These will have distinctive proper names such as Main Street Branch or Townsville Campus.



# Remove or edit default Organizational Units

After installing the Evergreen software, the default CONS, SYS1, BR1, etc., organizational units remain. These must be removed or edited to reflect actual library entities.

## Create and edit Organizational Units

1. Open Administration > Server Administration > Organizational Units.
2. In the left panel, expand the the Organizational Units hierarchy, select a unit.
3. A form opens in the right panel, displaying the data for the selected organizational unit.
4. To edit the existing, default organizational unit, enter system or library specific data in the form; complete all three tabs: Main Settings, Hours of Operation, Addresses.
5. Click Save.

To create a new dependent organizational unit, click New Child. The new child will appear in the hierarchy list below the parent unit. Click on the new unit and edit the data, click Save

## Organizational Unit data

The Addresses tab allows you to enter library contact information. Library Phone number, email address, and addresses are used in patron email notifications, hold slips, and transit slips. The Library address tab is broken out into four address types: Physical Address, Holds Address, Mailing Address, ILL Address.

The Hours of Operation tab is where you enter regular, weekly hours. Holiday and other closures are set in the Closed Dates Editor. Hours of operation and closed dates impact due dates and fine accrual.

## After Changing Organization Unit Data

After you change Org Unit data, you must run the autogen.sh script. This script updates the Evergreen organization tree and fieldmapper IDL. You will get unpredictable results if you don't run this after making changes.

Run this script as the opensrf Linux account.

```
autogen.sh
```

## Standing Penalties

In versions of Evergreen prior to 2.3, the following penalty types were available by default. When applied to user accounts, these penalties prevented users from completing the following actions:

- CIRC - Users cannot check out items

- HOLD - Users cannot place holds on items
- RENEW - Users cannot renew items

In version 2.3, two new penalty types are available in Evergreen:

- CAPTURE - This penalty prevents a user's holds from being captured. If the HOLD penalty has not been applied to a user's account, then the patron can place a hold, but the targeted item will not appear on a pull list and will not be captured for a hold if it is checked in.
- FULFILL - This penalty prevents a user from checking out an item that is on hold. If the HOLD and CAPTURE penalties have not been applied to a user's account, then the user can place a hold on an item, and the item can be captured for a hold. However, when he tries to check out the item, the circulator will see a pop up box with the name of the penalty type, FULFILL. The circulator must correct the problem with the account or must override the penalty to check out the item.

## **Part VII. Ordering materials**

# Table of Contents

16. Introduction .....	86
17. When should libraries use acquisitions? .....	87
18. Managing Funds .....	88
Funding Sources (Required) .....	88
Funds (Required) .....	88
Fund Tags (Optional) .....	89
19. Ordering .....	90
Providers (Required) .....	90
Distribution Formulas (Optional) .....	90
Helpful acquisitions Library Settings .....	90
Preparing for order record loading .....	91
Preparing to send electronic orders from Evergreen .....	91
20. Acquisitions Administration .....	93
Acquisitions Settings .....	93
Cancel/Delay reasons .....	93
Create a cancel/delay reason .....	94
Delete a custom cancel/delay reason .....	94
Claiming .....	94
Create a claim policy .....	95
Create a claim type .....	95
Create a claim event type .....	95
Create a claim policy action .....	96
Currency Types .....	96
Create a currency type .....	97
Edit a currency type .....	97
Distribution Formulas .....	97
Create a distribution formula .....	97
Edit a distribution formula .....	98
Electronic Data Interchange .....	98
Entering SANs (Standard Address Numbers) .....	99
Create an EDI Account .....	100
EDI Messages .....	103
Exchange Rates .....	103
Create an exchange rate .....	103
Edit an exchange rate .....	104
MARC Federated Search .....	104
Fund Tags .....	105
Funding Sources .....	106
Create a funding source .....	106
Allocate credits to funding sources .....	106
Allocate credits to funds .....	107
Track debits and credits .....	107
Funds .....	107
Create a fund .....	107
Allocate credits from funding sources to funds .....	108
Transfer credits between funds .....	109
Track balances and expenditures .....	109
Fund reporting .....	109
Edit a fund .....	110
Perform fiscal year close-out operation .....	110
Invoice menus .....	111

<u>Invoice item type</u> .....	<u>111</u>
<u>Invoice payment method</u> .....	<u>112</u>
<u>Line Item Features</u> .....	<u>112</u>
<u>Create a line item alert</u> .....	<u>113</u>
<u>Line item MARC attribute definitions</u> .....	<u>113</u>
<u>Providers</u> .....	<u>113</u>
<u>Create a provider</u> .....	<u>113</u>
<u>Add contact and holdings information to providers</u> .....	<u>114</u>
<u>Edit a provider</u> .....	<u>115</u>

# Chapter 16. Introduction

Acquisitions allows you to order materials, track the expenditure of your collections funds, track invoices and set up policies for manual claiming. In this chapter, we're going to be describing how to use the most essential functions of acquisitions in the Evergreen system.

# Chapter 17. When should libraries use acquisitions?

- When you want to track spending of your collections budget.
- When you want to use Evergreen to place orders electronically with your vendors.
- When you want to import large batches of records to quickly get your on-order titles into the system.

If your library simply wants to add on-order items to the catalog so that patrons can view and place holds on titles that have not yet arrived, acquisitions may be more than you need. Adding those on-order records via cataloging is a simpler option that works well for this use case.

Below are the basic administrative settings to be configured to get started with acquisitions. At a minimum, a library must configure Funding Sources, Funds, and Providers to use acquisitions.

# Chapter 18. Managing Funds

## Funding Sources (Required)

Funding sources allow you to specify the sources that contribute monies to your fund(s). You can create as few or as many funding sources as you need. These can be used to track exact amounts for accounts in your general ledger.

Example funding sources might be:

- A municipal allocation for your materials budget;
- A trust fund used for collections;
- A revolving account that is used to replace lost materials;
- Grant funds to be used for collections.

Funding sources are not tied to fiscal or calendar years, so you can continue to add money to the same funding source over multiple years, e.g. County Funding. Alternatively, you can name funding sources by year, e.g. County Funding 2010 and County Funding 2011, and apply credits each year to the matching source.

1. To create a funding source, select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funding Sources. Click the New Funding Source button. Give the funding source a name, an owning library, and code. You should also identify the type of currency that is used for the fund.
2. You must add money to the funding source before you can use it. Click the hyperlinked name of the funding source and then click the Apply Credit button. Add the amount of funds you need to add. The Note field is optional.

## Funds (Required)

Funds allow you to allocate credits toward specific purchases. They typically are used to track spending and purchases for specific collections. Some libraries may choose to define very broad funds for their collections (e.g. children's materials, adult materials) while others may choose to define more specific funds (e.g. adult non-fiction DVDs for BR1).

If your library does not wish to track fund accounting, you can create one large generic fund and use that fund for all of your purchases.

1. To create a fund, select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funds. Click the New Fund button. Give the fund a name and code.
2. The Year can either be the fiscal or calendar year for the fund.
3. If you are a multi-branch library that will be ordering titles for multiple branches, you should select the system as the owning Org Unit, even if this fund will only be used for collections at



a specific branch. If you are a one-branch library or if your branches do their own ordering, you can select the branch as the owning Org Unit.

4. Select the Currency Type that will be used for this fund.
5. You must select the Active checkbox to use the fund.
6. Enter a Balance Stop Percent. The balance stop percent prevents you from making purchases when only a specified amount of the fund remains. For example, if you want to spend 95 percent of your funds, leaving a five percent balance in the fund, then you would enter 95 in the field. When the fund reaches its balance stop percent, it will appear in red when you apply funds to copies.
7. Enter a Balance Warning Percent. The balance warning percent gives you a warning that the fund is low. You can specify any percent. For example, if you want to spend 90 percent of your funds and be warned when the fund has only 10 percent of its balance remaining, then enter 90 in the field. When the fund reaches its balance warning percent, it will appear in yellow when you apply funds to copies.
8. Check the Propagate box to propagate funds. When you propagate a fund, the system will create a new fund for the following fiscal year with the same parameters as your current fund. All of the settings transfer except for the year and the amount of money in the fund. Propagation occurs during the fiscal year close-out operation.
9. Check the Rollover box if you want to roll over remaining encumbrances and funds into the same fund next year. If you need the ability to roll over encumbrances without rolling over funds, go to the Library Settings Editor (Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor) and set Allow funds to be rolled over without bringing the money along to True.
10. You must add money to the fund before you can begin using it. Click the hyperlinked name of the fund. Click the Create Allocation button. Select a Funding Source from which the allocation will be drawn and then enter an amount for the allocation. The Note field is optional.

## Fund Tags (Optional)

You can apply tags to funds so that you can group funds for easy reporting. For example, you have three funds for children's materials: Children's Board Books, Children's DVDs, and Children's CDs. Assign a fund tag of children's to each fund. When you need to report on the amount that has been spent on all children's materials, you can run a report on the fund tag to find total expenditures on children's materials rather than reporting on each individual fund.

1. To create a fund tag, select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Fund Tags. Click the New Fund Tag button. Select an owning library and add the name for the fund tag.
2. To apply a fund tag to a fund, select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funds. Click on the hyperlinked name for the fund. Click the Tags tab and then click the Add Tag button. Select the tag from the dropdown menu.

For convenience when propagating or rolling over a fund for a new fiscal year, fund tags will be copied from the current fund to the new year's fund.

# Chapter 19. Ordering

## Providers (Required)

Providers are the vendors from whom you order titles.

1. To add a provider record, select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Providers.
2. Enter information about the provider. At a minimum, you need to add a Provider Name, Code, Owner, and Currency. You also need to select the Active checkbox to use the provider.

## Distribution Formulas (Optional)

If you are ordering for a multi-branch library system, distribution formulas are a useful way to specify the number of items that should be distributed to specific branches and item locations.

1. To create a distribution formula, select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Distribution Formulas. Click the New Formula button. Enter the formula name and select the owning library. Ignore the Skip Count field.
2. Click New Entry. Select an Owning Library from the drop down menu. This indicates the branch that will receive the items.
3. Select a Shelving Location from the drop down menu.
4. In the Item Count field, enter the number of items that should be distributed to that branch and copy location. You can enter the number or use the arrows on the right side of the field.
5. Keep adding entries until the distribution formula is complete.

## Helpful acquisitions Library Settings

There are several acquisitions Library Settings available that will help with acquisitions workflow. These settings can be found at Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.

- Default circulation modifier - Automatically applies a default circulation modifier to all of your acquisitions items. Useful if you use a specific circulation modifier for on-order items.
- Default copy location - Automatically applies a default item location (e.g. On Order) to acquisitions items.
- Temporary barcode prefix - Applies a unique prefix to the barcode that is automatically generated during the acquisitions process.
- Temporary call number prefix - Applies a unique prefix to the start of the call number that is automatically generated during the acquisitions process.

# Preparing for order record loading

If your library is planning to upload order records in a batch, you need to add some information to your provider records so that Evergreen knows how to map the item data contained in the order record.

1. Retrieve the record for the provider that has supplied the order records by selecting Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Providers. Click on the hyperlinked Provider name.
2. In the top frame, add the MARC tag that contains your holdings data in the Holdings Tag field (this tag can also be entered at the time you create the provider record.)
3. To map the tag's subfields to the appropriate copy data, click the Holding Subfield tab. Click the New Holding Subfield button and select the copy data that you are mapping. Add the subfield that contains that data and click Save.

## Holding Subfield

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	#	Provider	Name	Subfield	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	bt	quantity	q	
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	bt	estimated_price	p	
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	bt	owning_lib	b	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	bt	fund_code	u	
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	bt	copy_location	t	
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	bt	circ_modifier	g	

4. If your vendor is sending other data in a MARC tag that needs to be mapped to a field in acquisitions, you can do so by clicking the Attribute Definitions tab. As an example, if you need to import the PO Name, you could set up an attribute definition by adding an XPath similar to:

```
code => purchase_order
xpath => //*[@tag="962"]/*[@code="p"]
Is Identifier => false
```

where 962 is the holdings tag and p is the subfield that contains the PO Name.

# Preparing to send electronic orders from Evergreen

If your library wants to transmit electronic order information to a vendor, you will need to configure your server to use EDI. You need to install the EDI translator and EDI scripts on your server by following the instructions in the command line system administration manual.

Configure your provider's EDI information by selecting Administration → Acquisitions Administration → EDI Accounts. Click New Account Button. Give the account a name in the Label box.

1. Host is the vendor-assigned FTP/SFTP/SSH hostname.
2. Username is the vendor-assigned FTP/SFTP/SSH username.
3. Password is the vendor-assigned FTP/SFTP/SSH password.
4. Account This field enables you to add a supplemental password for entry to a remote system after log in has been completed. This field is optional for the ILS but may be required by your provider.
5. Owner is the organizational unit who owns the EDI account
6. Last Activity is the date of last activity for the account
7. Provider is a link to the codes for the Provider record.
8. Path is the path on the vendor's server where Evergreen will deposit its outgoing order files.
9. Incoming Directory is the path on the vendor's server where Evergreen will retrieve incoming order responses and invoices.
- 10 Vendor Account Number is the Vendor assigned account number.
- 11 Vendor Assigned Code is usually a sub-account designation. It can be used with or without the Vendor Account Number.

You now need to add this EDI Account and the SAN code to the provider's record.

1. Select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Providers.
2. Click the hyperlinked Provider name.
3. Select the account you just created in the EDI Default field.
4. Add the vendor-provided SAN code to the SAN field.

The last step is to add your library's SAN code to Evergreen.

1. Select Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units.
2. Select your library from the organizational hierarchy in the left pane.
3. Click the Addresses tab and add your library's SAN code to the SAN field.

# Chapter 20. Acquisitions Administration

## Acquisitions Settings

Several settings in the Library Settings area of the Administration module pertain to functions in the Acquisitions module. You can access these settings by clicking Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.

- CAT: Delete bib if all copies are deleted via Acquisitions lineitem cancellation - If you cancel a line item, then all of the on order copies in the catalog are deleted. If, when you cancel a line item, you also want to delete the bib record, then set this setting to TRUE.
- Allow funds to be rolled over without bringing the money along - enables you to move a fund's encumbrances from one year to the next without moving unspent money. Unused money is not added to the next year's fund and is not available for use.
- Allows patrons to create automatic holds from purchase requests.
- Default circulation modifier - This modifier would be applied to items that are created in the acquisitions module
- Default copy location - This copy location would be applied to items that are created in the acquisitions module
- Fund Spending Limit for Block - When the amount remaining in the fund, including spent money and encumbrances, goes below this percentage, attempts to spend from the fund will be blocked.
- Fund Spending Limit for Warning - When the amount remaining in the fund, including spent money and encumbrances, goes below this percentage, attempts to spend from the fund will result in a warning to the staff.
- Rollover Distribution Formulae Funds - When set to true, during fiscal rollover, all distribution formulae will update to use new funds.
- Set copy creator as receiver - When receiving a copy in acquisitions, set the copy "creator" to be the staff that received the copy
- Temporary barcode prefix - Temporary barcode prefix for items that are created in the acquisitions module
- Temporary call number prefix - Temporary call number prefix for items that are created in the acquisitions module

## Cancel/Delay reasons

The Cancel reasons link enables you to predefine the reasons for which a line item or a PO can be cancelled. A default list of reasons appears, but you can add custom reasons to this list. Applying the cancel reason will prevent the item from appearing in a claims list and will allow you to cancel debits associated with the purchase. Cancel reasons also enable you to delay a purchase. For example, you could create a cancel reason of back ordered, and you could choose to keep the debits associated with the purchase.

## Create a cancel/delay reason

1. To add a new cancel reason, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Cancel reasons.
2. Click New Cancel Reason.
3. Select a using library from the drop-down menu. The using library indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this cancel reason. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units.)
4. Create a label for the cancel reason. This label will appear when you select a cancel reason on an item or a PO.
5. Create a description of the cancel reason. This is a free text field and can comprise any text of your choosing.
6. If you want to retain the debits associated with the cancelled purchase, click the box adjacent to Keep Debits→
7. Click Save.

## Delete a custom cancel/delay reason

You can delete custom cancel reason.

1. Select the checkbox for the custom cancel reason that should be deleted.
2. Click the Delete Selected button.



You cannot select the checkbox for any of the default cancel reasons because the system expects those reasons to be available to handle EDI order responses.

## Claiming

Currently, all claiming is manual, but the admin module enables you to build claim policies and specify the action(s) that users should take to claim items.

## Create a claim policy

The claim policy link enables you to name the claim policy and specify the organization that owns it.

1. To create a claim policy, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Claim Policies.
2. Create a claim policy name. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Select an org unit from the drop-down menu. The org unit indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this claim policy. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list.

4. Enter a description. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
5. Click Save.

## Create a claim type

The claim type link enables you to specify the reason for a type of claim.

1. To create a claim type, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Claim types.
2. Create a claim type. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Select an org unit from the drop-down menu. The org unit indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this claim type. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list.

4. Enter a description. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
5. Click Save.

## Create a claim event type

The claim event type describes the physical action that should occur when an item needs to be claimed. For example, the user should notify the vendor via email that the library is claiming an item.

1. To access the claim event types, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Claim event type.
2. Enter a code for the claim event type. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Select an org unit from the drop-down menu. The org unit indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this event type. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list.

4. Enter a description. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
5. If this claim is initiated by the user, then check the box adjacent to Library Initiated.



Currently, all claims are initiated by a user. The ILS cannot automatically claim an issue.

6. Click Save.

## Create a claim policy action

The claim policy action enables you to specify how long a user should wait before claiming the item.

1. To access claim policy actions, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Claim Policy Actions.
2. Select an Action (Event Type) from the drop-down menu.
3. Enter an action interval. This field indicates how long a user should wait before claiming the item.
4. In the Claim Policy ID field, select a claim policy from the drop-down menu.
5. Click Save.



You can create claim cycles by adding multiple claim policy actions to a claim policy.

## Currency Types



Currency types can be created and applied to funds in the administrative module. When a fund is applied to a copy or line item for purchase, the item will be purchased in the currency associated with that fund.

## Create a currency type

1. To create a new currency type, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Currency types.
2. Enter the currency code. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Enter the name of the currency type in Currency Label field. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Click Save.

## Edit a currency type

1. To edit a currency type, click your cursor in the row that you want to edit. The row will turn blue.
2. Double click. The pop-up box will appear, and you can edit the fields.
3. After making changes, click Save.



From the currency types interface, you can delete currencies that have never been applied to funds or used to make purchases.

## Distribution Formulas

Distribution formulas allow you to specify the number of copies that should be distributed to specific branches. They can also serve as templates allowing you to predefine settings for your copies. You can create and reuse formulas as needed.

## Create a distribution formula

1. Click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Distribution Formulas.
2. Click New Formula.
3. Enter a Formula Name. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Choose a Formula Owner from the drop-down menu. The Formula Owner indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this formula. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list.

5. Ignore the Skip Count field which is currently not used.
6. Click Save.
7. Click New Entry.
8. Select an Owning Library from the drop-down menu. This indicates the branch that will receive the items. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).
9. Select/enter any of the following copy details you want to predefine in the distribution formula.
  - Copy Location
  - Fund
  - Circ Modifier
  - Collection Code
10. In the Item Count field, enter the number of items that should be distributed to the branch. You can enter the number or use the arrows on the right side of the field.
11. Click Apply Changes. The screen will reload.
12. To view the changes to your formula, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Distribution Formulas. The item\_count will reflect the entries to your distribution formula.



To edit the Formula Name, click the hyperlinked name of the formula in the top left corner. A pop-up box will enable you to enter a new formula name.

## Edit a distribution formula

To edit a distribution formula, click the hyperlinked title of the formula.

# Electronic Data Interchange

Many libraries use Electronic Data Interchange (EDI) accounts to send purchase orders and receive invoices from providers electronically. In Evergreen users can setup EDI accounts and manage EDI messages in the admin module. EDI messages and notes can be viewed in the acquisitions module.

See also the command line system administration manual, which includes some initial setup steps that are required for use of EDI.

## Entering SANs (Standard Address Numbers)

For EDI to work your library must have a SAN and each of your providers must each supply you with their SAN.

A SAN (Standard Address Number) is a unique 7 digit number that identifies your library.

### Entering a Library's SAN

These steps only need to be done once per library.

1. In Evergreen select Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units
2. Find your library in the tree on the left side of the page and click on it to open the settings.



Multi-branch library systems will see an entry for each branch but should select their system's top organization unit.

3. Click on the Address tab.
4. Click on the Mailing Address tab.
5. Enter your library's SAN in the field labeled SAN.
6. Click Save.

A screenshot of the Evergreen system administration interface. At the top, there are four tabs: 'Main Settings', 'Hours of Operation', 'Addresses', and 'ILL Address'. The 'Addresses' tab is selected. Below it, there are four sub-tabs: 'Physical Address', 'Holds Address', 'Mailing Address', and 'ILL Address'. The 'Mailing Address' sub-tab is selected. The form contains several fields: 'Type' is set to 'MAILING' and 'Valid' is checked; 'Street 1' is '1234 Main Street'; 'Street 2' is empty; 'City' is 'Springfield', 'State' is 'BC', and 'Zip' is 'V6B 5J3' (with a yellow warning icon); 'Country' is 'Canada' and 'County' is empty; and 'SAN' is '7654321'. A 'Save' button is at the bottom left.

### Entering a Provider's SAN

These steps need to be repeated for every provider with which EDI is used.

1. In Evergreen select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Providers.

2. Click the hyperlinked name of the provider you would like to edit.

Provider																
Context Org Unit ZSP																
<a href="#">Back</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Filter</a>																
✓	#	Provider Name	Code	Owner	Currency	Active	Default # Copies	Default Claim Policy	EDI Default	Email	Fax Phone	Holdings Tag	Phone	Prepaym Required	SAN	URL
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<a href="#">Amazon</a>	AMA_ZS	ZSP-A	Canadian Dollars	True	0							False		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<a href="#">Amazon</a>	AMA_ZS	ZSP-B	Canadian Dollars	True	0							False		
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<a href="#">Fictional Bookstor</a>	FICB-TE	ZSP	Canadian Dollars	True	0							False		
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	<a href="#">New Fictional Bookstor</a>	NFICB-TE	ZSP	Canadian Dollars	True	1							False		

3. Enter your provider's SAN in the field labeled SAN.

4. Click Save.

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Code	NFICB-TEST
Currency	Canadian Dollars	Default # Copies	1
Default Claim Policy		EDI Default	
Email		Fax Phone	
Holdings Tag		Owner	ZSP
Phone		Prepayment Required	<input type="checkbox"/>
Provider ID	773	Provider Name	New Fictional Bookstore
SAN	1234567	URL	
Cancel		Save	

## Create an EDI Account



You must create your provider before you create an EDI account for the provider.

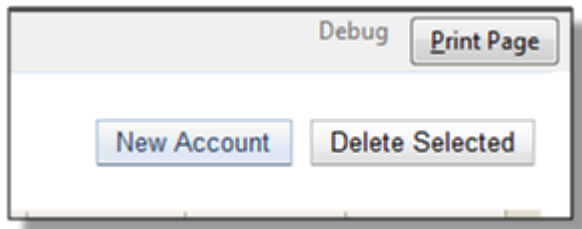
1. Contact your provider requesting the following information:

- Host
- Username
- Password
- Path

- Incoming Directory
- Provider's SAN

2. In Evergreen select Administration → Acquisitions Administration → EDI Accounts.

3. Click New Account. A pop-up will appear.



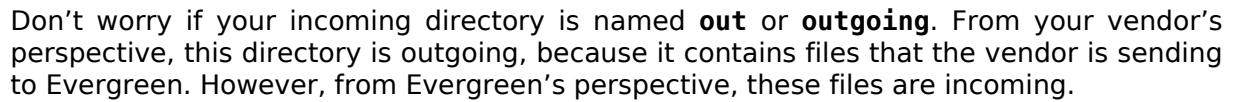
4. Fill in the following fields:

- In the Label field, enter a name for the EDI account.
- In the Host field, enter the requisite FTP or SCP information supplied by your provider. Be sure to include the protocol (e.g. **ftp://ftp.vendorname.com**)
- In the Username field, enter the username supplied by your provider.
- In the Password field, enter the password supplied by your provider.
- Select your library as the Owner from the drop down menu. Multi-branch libraries should select their top level organizational unit.
- The Last Activity updates automatically with any inbound or outbound communication.
- In the Provider field, enter the code used in Evergreen for your provider.
- In the Path field, enter the path supplied by your provider. The path indicates a directory on the provider's server where Evergreen will deposit its outgoing order files.



If your vendor requests a specific file extension for EDI purchase orders, such as **.ord**, enter the name of the directory, followed by a slash, followed by an asterisk, followed by a period, followed by the extension. For example, if the vendor requests that EDI purchase orders be sent to a directory called **in** with the file extension **.ord**, your path would be **in/\*.ord**.

- In the Incoming Directory field, enter the incoming directory supplied by your provider. This indicates the directory on the vendor's server where Evergreen will retrieve incoming order responses and invoices.



5. Click Save.
6. Click on the link in the Provider field.

7. Select the EDI account that has just been created from the EDI Default drop down menu.

Code	NFICB-TEST
Default # Copies	1
EDI Default	<div><div></div><div></div></div>
Fax Phone	NFIC_ZSP
Owner	FAKE
Prepayment Required	<input type="checkbox"/>
Provider Name	ZSP
URL	New Fictional Bookstore

8. Click Save.

## EDI Messages

The EDI Messages screen displays all incoming and outgoing messages between the library and its providers. To see details of a particular EDI message, including the raw EDIFACT message, double click on a message entry. To find a specific EDI message, the Filter options can be useful. Outside the Admin interface, EDI messages that pertain to a specific purchase order can be viewed from the purchase order interface (See Acquisitions → Purchase Orders).

## Exchange Rates

Exchange rates define the rate of exchange between currencies. Evergreen will automatically calculate exchange rates for purchases. Evergreen assumes that the currency of the purchasing fund is identical to the currency of the provider, but it provides for two unique situations: If the currency of the fund that is used for the purchase is different from the currency of the provider as listed in the provider profile, then Evergreen will use the exchange rate to calculate the price of the item in the currency of the fund and debit the fund accordingly. When money is transferred between funds that use different currency types, Evergreen will automatically use the exchange rate to convert the money to the currency of the receiving fund. During such transfers, however, staff can override the automatic conversion by providing an explicit amount to credit to the receiving fund.

### Create an exchange rate

1. To create a new exchange rate, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Exchange Rates.
2. Click New Exchange Rate.

3. Enter the From Currency from the drop-down menu populated by the currency types.
4. Enter the To Currency from the drop-down menu populated by the currency types.
5. Enter the exchange Ratio.
6. Click Save.

## Edit an exchange rate

Edit an exchange rate just as you would edit a currency type.

## MARC Federated Search

The MARC Federated Search enables you to import bibliographic records into a selection list or purchase order from a Z39.50 source.

1. Click Acquisitions → MARC Federated Search.
2. Check the boxes of Z39.50 services that you want to search. Your local Evergreen Catalog is checked by default. Click Submit.

### Search Sources

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Evergreen Catalog
<input type="checkbox"/>	OCLC
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Library of Congress
<input type="checkbox"/>	ibiblios.net

### Search Fields

Author	<input type="text"/>
ISBN	<input type="text" value="978-1439164631"/>
ISSN	<input type="text"/>
Item Type	<input type="text"/>
LCCN	<input type="text"/>
Publication Date	<input type="text"/>
Publisher	<input type="text"/>
Title	<input type="text" value="left neglected"/>
Title Control Number	<input type="text"/>
Hits Per Source	<input type="text" value="10"/>
<input type="button" value="Submit"/> <input type="button" value="Clear Form"/>	



3. A list of results will appear. Click the Copies link to add copy information to the line item. See [Line Item Features](#) for more information.
4. Click the Notes link to add notes or line item alerts to the line item. See [Line Item Features](#) for more information.
5. Enter a price in the Estimated Price field.
6. You can save the line item(s) to a selection list by checking the box on the line item and clicking Actions → Save Items to Selection List. You can also create a purchase order from the line item(s) by checking the box on the line item and clicking Actions → Create Purchase Order.

Items	Notes	Actions	Status	Estimated Price
<a href="#">Copies(0)</a>	<a href="#">Notes(0)</a>	<div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 2px;"> -- Actions -- </div>	new	

## Fund Tags

You can apply tags to funds so that you can group funds for easy reporting. For example, you have three funds for children's materials: Children's Board Books, Children's DVDs, and Children's CDs. Assign a fund tag of children's to each fund. When you need to report on the amount that has been spent on all children's materials, you can run a report on the fund tag to find total expenditures on children's materials rather than reporting on each individual fund.

### Create a Fund Tag

1. To create a fund tag, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Fund Tags.
2. Click New Fund Tag. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Select a Fund Tag Owner from the drop-down menu. The owner indicates the organizational unit(s) whose staff can use this fund tag. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list.

4. Enter a Fund Tag Name. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
5. Click Save.

# Funding Sources

Funding sources allow you to specify the sources that contribute monies to your fund(s). You can create as few or as many funding sources as you need. These can be used to track exact amounts for accounts in your general ledger. You can then use funds to track spending and purchases for specific collections.

## Create a funding source

1. To create a new funding source, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funding Source.
2. Enter a funding source name. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Select an owner from the drop-down menu. The owner indicates the organizational unit(s) whose staff can use this funding source. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list. For example, if a system is made the owner of a funding source, then users with appropriate permissions at the branches within the system could also use the funding source.

4. Create a code for the source. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
5. Select a currency from the drop-down menu. This menu is populated from the choices in the Currency Types interface.
6. Click Save.

## Allocate credits to funding sources

1. Apply a credit to this funding source.
2. Enter the amount of money that the funding source contributes to the organization. Funding sources are not tied to fiscal or calendar years, so you can continue to add money to the same funding source over multiple years, e.g. County Funding. Alternatively, you can name funding sources by year, e.g. County Funding 2010 and County Funding 2011, and apply credits each year to the matching source.
3. To apply a credit, click on the hyperlinked name of the funding source. The Funding Source Details will appear.
4. Click Apply Credit.

5. Enter an amount to apply to this funding source.
6. Enter a note. This field is optional.
7. Click Apply.

## Allocate credits to funds

If you have already set up your funds, then you can then click the Allocate to Fund button to apply credits from the funding sources to the funds. If you have not yet set up your funds, or you need to add a new one, you can allocate credits to funds from the funds interface. See section 1.2 for more information.

1. To allocate credits to funds, click Allocate to Fund.
2. Enter the amount that you want to allocate.
3. Enter a note. This field is optional.
4. Click Apply.

## Track debits and credits

You can track credits to and allocations from each funding source. These amounts are updated when credits and allocations are made in the Funding Source Details. Access the Funding Source Details by clicking on the hyperlinked name of the Funding Source.

## Funds

Funds allow you to allocate credits toward specific purchases. In the funds interface, you can create funds; allocate credits from funding sources to funds; transfer money between funds; and apply fund tags to funds. Funds are created for a specific year, either fiscal or calendar. These funds are owned by org units. At the top of the funds interface, you can set a contextual org unit and year. The drop-down menu at the top of the screen enables you to focus on funds that are owned by specific organizational units during specific years.

## Create a fund

1. To create a new fund, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funds.
2. Enter a name for the fund. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
3. Create a code for the fund. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Enter a year for the fund. This can be a fiscal year or a calendar year. The format of the year is YYYY.

5. Select an org unit from the drop-down menu. The org unit indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this fund. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list. See section

6. Select a currency type from the drop-down menu. This menu is comprised of entries in the currency types menu. When a fund is applied to a line item or copy, the price of the item will be encumbered in the currency associated with the fund.
7. Click the Active box to activate this fund. You cannot make purchases from this fund if it is not active.
8. Enter a Balance Stop Percent. The balance stop percent prevents you from making purchases when only a specified amount of the fund remains. For example, if you want to spend 95 percent of your funds, leaving a five percent balance in the fund, then you would enter 95 in the field. When the fund reaches its balance stop percent, it will appear in red when you apply funds to copies.
9. Enter a Balance Warning Percent. The balance warning percent gives you a warning that the fund is low. You can specify any percent. For example, if you want to spend 90 percent of your funds and be warned when the fund has only 10 percent of its balance remaining, then enter 90 in the field. When the fund reaches its balance warning percent, it will appear in yellow when you apply funds to copies.
10. Check the Propagate box to propagate funds. When you propagate a fund, the ILS will create a new fund for the following fiscal year with the same parameters as your current fund. All of the settings transfer except for the year and the amount of money in the fund. Propagation occurs during the fiscal year close-out operation.
11. Check the Rollover box if you want to roll over remaining funds into the same fund next year. You should also check this box if you only want to roll over encumbrances into next year's fund.
12. Click Save.

## Allocate credits from funding sources to funds

Credits can be applied to funds from funding sources using the fund interface. The credits that you apply to the fund can be applied later to purchases.

1. To access funds, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funds.
2. Click the hyperlinked name of the fund.
3. To add a credit to the fund, click the Create Allocation tab.
4. Choose a Funding Source from the drop-down menu.

5. Enter an amount that you want to apply to the fund from the funding source.
6. Enter a note. This field is optional.
7. Click Apply.

## Transfer credits between funds

The credits that you allocate to funds can be transferred between funds if desired. In the following example, you can transfer \$500.00 from the Young Adult Fiction fund to the Children's DVD fund.

1. To access funds, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Funds.
2. Click the hyperlinked name of the originating fund.
3. The Fund Details screen appears. Click Transfer Money.
4. Enter the amount that you would like to transfer.
5. From the drop-down menu, select the destination fund.
6. Add a note. This field is optional.
7. Click Transfer.

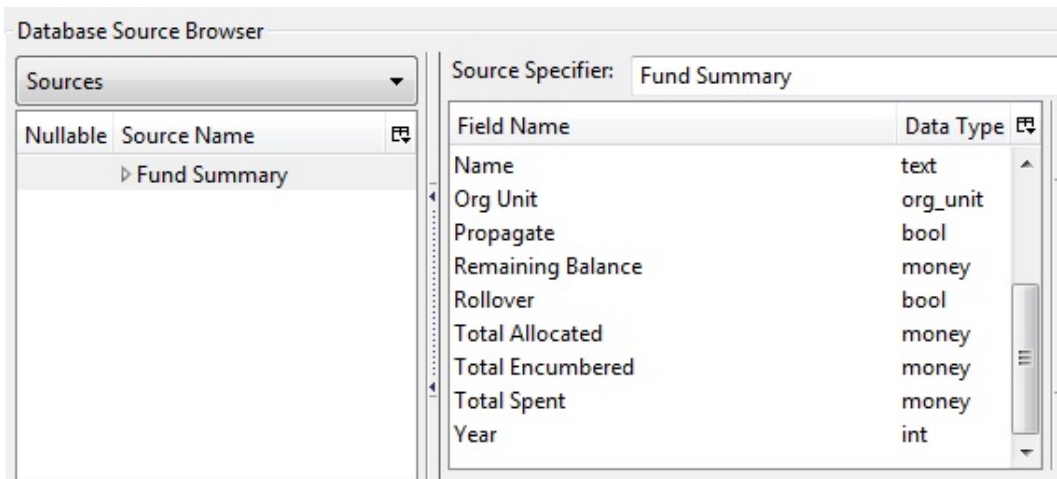
## Track balances and expenditures

The Fund Details allows you to track the fund's balance, encumbrances, and amount spent. It also allows you to track allocations from the funding source(s), debits, and fund tags.

1. To access the fund details, click on the hyperlinked name of the fund that you created.
2. The Summary allows you to track the following:
3. Balance - The balance is calculated by subtracting both items that have been invoiced and encumbrances from the total allocated to the fund.
4. Total Allocated - This amount is the total amount allocated from the Funding Source.
5. Spent Balance - This balance is calculated by subtracting only the items that have been invoiced from the total allocated to the fund. It does not include encumbrances.
6. Total Debits - The total debits are calculated by adding the cost of items that have been invoiced and encumbrances.
7. Total Spent - The total spent is calculated by adding the cost of items that have been invoiced. It does not include encumbrances.
8. Total Encumbered - The total encumbered is calculated by adding all encumbrances.

## Fund reporting

A core source, Fund Summary, is available in the reports interface. This core source enables librarians to easily run a report on fund activity. Fields that are accessible in this interface include Remaining Balance, Total Allocated, Total Encumbered, and Total Spent.



The screenshot shows the 'Database Source Browser' window. On the left, a 'Sources' dropdown menu is open, showing a list with 'Fund Summary' selected. The main area on the right is titled 'Source Specifier: Fund Summary' and contains a table of fields and their data types.

Field Name	Data Type
Name	text
Org Unit	org_unit
Propagate	bool
Remaining Balance	money
Rollover	bool
Total Allocated	money
Total Encumbered	money
Total Spent	money
Year	int

## Edit a fund

Edit a fund just as you would edit a currency type.

## Perform fiscal year close-out operation

The Fiscal Year Close-Out Operation allows you to deactivate funds for the current year and create analogous funds for the next year. It transfers encumbrances to the analogous funds, and it rolls over any remaining funds if you checked the rollover box when creating the fund.

1. To access the year end closeout of a fund, click Administration → Server Administration → Acquisitions → Funds.
2. Click Fund Propagation and Rollover.
3. Check the box adjacent to Perform Fiscal Year Close-Out Operation.
4. For funds that have the "Rollover" setting enabled, if you want to move the fund's encumbrances to the next year without moving unspent money, check the box adjacent to Limit Fiscal Year Close-out Operation to Encumbrances.



The Limit Fiscal Year Close-out Operation to Encumbrances will only display if the Allow funds to be rolled over without bringing the money along Library Setting has been enabled. This setting is available in the Library Setting Editor accessible via Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.

---

Propagation creates new funds for the subsequent fiscal year based on the funds for the selected fiscal year. Only funds with the propagate setting enabled will be affected. No money or encumbrances are altered during this process.

---

Perform Fiscal Year Close-out Operation: ☐

---

The year end close out operation moves encumbrances from the selected fiscal year to the analogous funds in the subsequent fiscal year and it deactivates funds for the selected fiscal year. Additionally, for all funds that have the "Rollover" setting enabled, this process will move all unspent money to the analogous fund in the subsequent fiscal year.

---

Limit Fiscal Year Close-out Operation to Encumbrances: ☐

---

This modifies the above described Close-out Operation, causing funds to be transferred into the void (that is, entirely removed) instead of being transferred to the analogous funds in the subsequent fiscal year.

---

Context Org Unit: CONS

---

5. Notice that the context org unit reflects the context org unit that you selected at the top of the Funds screen.
6. If you want to perform the close-out operation on the context org unit and its child units, then check the box adjacent to Include Funds for Descendant Org Units.
7. Check the box adjacent to dry run if you want to test changes to the funds before they are enacted. Evergreen will generate a summary of the changes that would occur during the selected operations. No data will be changed.
8. Click Process.
9. Evergreen will begin the propagation process. Evergreen will make a clone of each fund, but it will increment the year by 1.

## Invoice menus

Invoice menus allow you to create drop-down menus that appear on invoices. You can create an invoice item type or invoice payment method.

## Invoice item type

The invoice item type allows you to enter the types of additional charges that you can add to an invoice. Examples of additional charge types might include taxes or processing fees. Charges for

bibliographic items are listed separately from these additional charges. A default list of charge types displays, but you can add custom charge types to this list. Invoice item types can also be used when adding non-bibliographic items to a purchase order. When invoiced, the invoice item type will copy from the purchase order to the invoice.

1. To create a new charge type, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Invoice Item Type.
2. Click New Invoice Item Type.
3. Create a code for the charge type. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Create a label. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field. The text in this field appears in the drop-down menu on the invoice.
5. If items on the invoice were purchased with the monies in multiple funds, then you can divide the additional charge across funds. Check the box adjacent to Prorate→ if you want to prorate the charge across funds.
6. Click Save.

## Invoice payment method

The invoice payment method allows you to predefine the type(s) of invoices and payment method(s) that you accept. The text that you enter in the admin module will appear as a drop-down menu in the invoice type and payment method fields on the invoice.

1. To create a new invoice payment method, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Invoice Payment Method.
2. Click New Invoice Payment Method.
3. Create a code for the invoice payment method. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Create a name for the invoice payment method. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field. The text in this field appears in the drop-down menu on the invoice.
5. Click Save.

Payment methods can be deleted from this screen.

## Line Item Features

Line item alerts are predefined text that can be added to line items that are on selection lists or purchase orders. You can define the alerts from which staff can choose. Line item alerts appear in a pop-up box when the line item, or any of its copies, are marked as received.



## Create a line item alert

1. To create a line item alert, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Line Item Alerts.
2. Click New Line Item Alert Text.
3. Create a code for the text. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Create a description for the text. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
5. Select an owning library from the drop-down menu. The owning library indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this alert. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).
6. Click Save.

## Line item MARC attribute definitions

Line item attributes define the fields that Evergreen needs to extract from the bibliographic records that are in the acquisitions database to display in the catalog. Also, these attributes will appear as fields in the New Brief Record interface. You will be able to enter information for the brief record in the fields where attributes have been defined.

## Providers

Providers are vendors. You can create a provider profile that includes contact information for the provider, holdings information, invoices, and other information.

## Create a provider

1. To create a new provider, click Administration → Acquisitions Administration → Providers.
2. Enter the provider name.
3. Create a code for the provider. No limits exist on the number of characters that can be entered in this field.
4. Select an owner from the drop-down menu. The owner indicates the organizational units whose staff can use this provider. This menu is populated with the shortnames that you created for your libraries in the organizational units tree (See Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units).



The rule of parental inheritance applies to this list.

5. Select a currency from the drop-down menu. This drop-down list is populated by the list of currencies available in the currency types.
6. A provider must be active in order for purchases to be made from that provider. To activate the provider, check the box adjacent to Active. To deactivate a vendor, uncheck the box.
7. Add the default # of copies that are typically ordered through the provider. This number will automatically populate the line item's Copies box on any PO's associated with this provider. If another quantity is entered during the selection or ordering process, it will override this default. If no number is specified, the default number of copies will be zero.
8. Select a default claim policy from the drop-down box. This list is derived from the claim policies that can be created
9. Select an EDI default. This list is derived from the EDI accounts that can be created.
10. Enter the provider's email address.
11. In the Fax Phone field, enter the provider's fax number.
12. In the holdings tag field, enter the tag in which the provider places holdings data.
13. In the phone field, enter the provider's phone number.
14. If prepayment is required to purchase from this provider, then check the box adjacent to prepayment required.
15. Enter the Standard Address Number (SAN) for your provider.
16. Enter the web address for the provider's website in the URL field.
17. Click Save.

## Add contact and holdings information to providers

After you save the provider profile, the screen reloads so that you can save additional information about the provider. You can also access this screen by clicking the hyperlinked name of the provider on the Providers screen. The tabs allow you to add a provider address and contact, attribute definitions, and holding subfields. You can also view invoices associated with the provider.

1. Enter a Provider Address, and click Save.



Required fields for the provider address are: Street 1, city, state, country, post code. You may have multiple valid addresses.

2. Enter the Provider Contact, and click Save.
3. Your vendor may include information that is specific to your organization in MARC tags. You can specify the types of information that should be entered in each MARC tag. Enter attribute

definitions to correlate MARC tags with the information that they should contain in incoming vendor records. Some technical knowledge is required to enter XPath information. As an example, if you need to import the PO Name, you could set up an attribute definition by adding an XPath similar to:

```
code => purchase_order
xpath => //*[@tag="962"]/*[@code="p"]
Is Identifier => false
```

where 962 is the holdings tag and p is the subfield that contains the PO Name.

4. You may have entered a holdings tag when you created the provider profile. You can also enter holdings subfields. Holdings subfields allow you to specify subfields within the holdings tag to which your vendor adds holdings information, such as quantity ordered, fund, and estimated price.
5. Click invoices to access invoices associated with a provider.

## Edit a provider

Edit a provider just as you would edit a currency type.

You can delete providers only if no purchase orders have been assigned to them.

# **Part VIII. Cataloging administration**

# Table of Contents

21. Authorities .....	119
Authority Control Sets .....	119
Add a Control Set .....	119
Thesauri .....	120
Add a Thesaurus .....	120
Authority Fields .....	121
Create an Authority Field .....	121
Browse Axes .....	123
Create a new Browse Axis .....	123
22. Call Number Prefixes and Suffixes .....	125
Configure call number prefixes .....	125
Configure call number suffixes .....	126
Apply Call Number Prefixes and Suffixes .....	126
23. Statistical Categories Editor .....	127
24. MARC Import Remove Fields .....	131
Create a MARC Import Remove Fields profile .....	131
Import Options .....	132
Permissions to use this Feature .....	134
25. Item Tags (Digital Bookplates) .....	135
Administration .....	135
Creating item Tags .....	135
Create Item Tag Types .....	135
Create Item Tags .....	136
Managing Item Tags .....	137
Editing Tags .....	137
Deleting Tags .....	137
26. MARC Record Attributes .....	138
Managing Fixed Field Drop-down Context Menus .....	138
Multi Valued Fields and Composite Record Attributes .....	138
Multi Valued Fields .....	139
Composite Record Attributes .....	139
Coded Value Maps .....	140
Composite Attribute Entry Definitions .....	141
Search and Icon Formats .....	142
27. Z39.50 Servers .....	146
Restrict Z39.50 Sources by Permission Group .....	146
Administrative Settings .....	146
Restrict Z39.50 Sources by Permission Group .....	146
Storing Z39.50 Server Credentials .....	148
28. Administering shelving locations .....	149
Creating new shelving locations .....	149
Deleting shelving locations .....	149
Modifying shelving location order .....	150
Shelving location groups .....	150
Create a Shelving Location Group .....	150
Order Shelving Location Groups .....	151
29. Importing materials in the staff client .....	152
Staff client batch record imports .....	152
When to use the MARC Batch Importer .....	152
Record Match Sets .....	152
Create Match Sets .....	153

<u>Quality Metrics</u> .....	<u>154</u>
<u>Import Item Attributes</u> .....	<u>154</u>
<u>Overlay/Merge Profiles</u> .....	<u>155</u>
<u>Importing the records</u> .....	<u>156</u>

# Chapter 21. Authorities

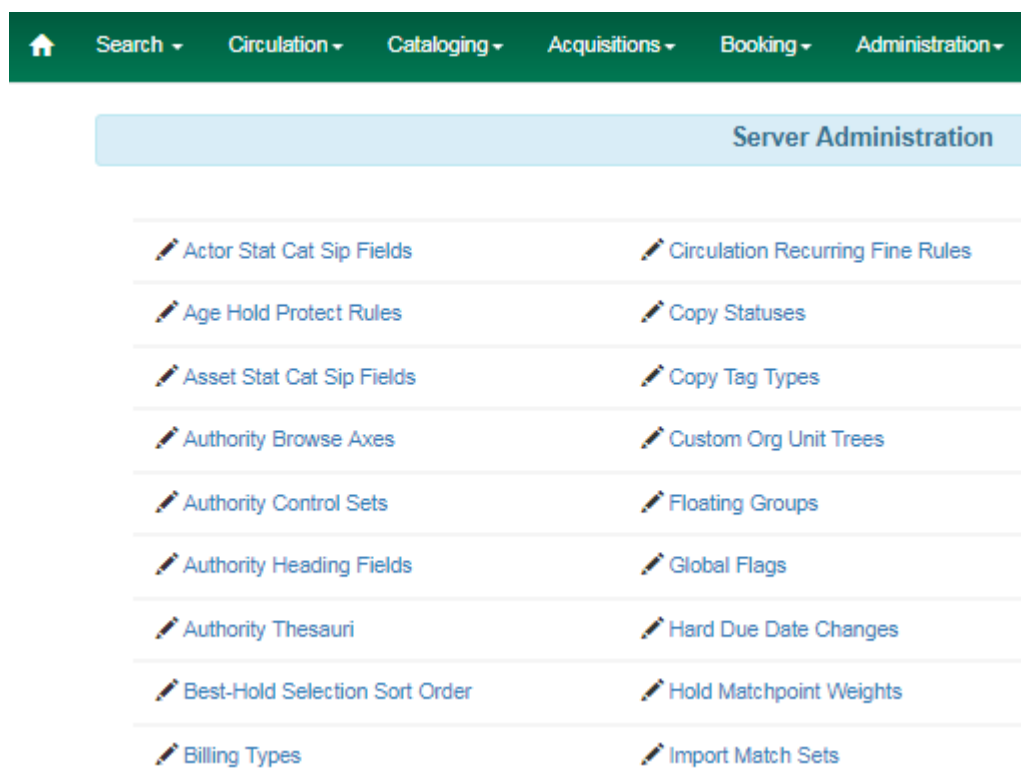
## Authority Control Sets

The tags and subfields that display in authority records in Evergreen are proscribed by control sets. The Library of Congress control set is the default control set in Evergreen. You can create customized control sets for authority records. Also, you can define thesauri and authority fields for these control sets.

Patrons and staff will be able to browse authorities in the OPAC. The following fields are browsable by default: author, series, subject, title, and topic. You will be able to add custom browse axes in addition to these default fields.

You can specify the MARC tags and subfields that an authority record should contain. The Library of Congress control set exists in the staff client by default. The control sets feature enables librarians to add or customize new control sets.

To access existing control sets, click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Control Sets.



## Add a Control Set

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Control Sets.

2. Click New Control Set.
3. Add a Name to the control set. Enter any number of characters.
4. Add a Description of the control set. Enter any number of characters.
5. Click Save.

The screenshot shows the 'Control Sets' management interface. It features a table with the following data:

Name	Description	Other properties
✓ Name		
LoC	Library of Congress standard authority record control semantics	<a href="#">Thesauri (11)</a> <a href="#">Authority Fields (48)</a>

A modal dialog is open for adding a new control set. It contains the following fields and buttons:

Name	Song Title Index
Description	Authority Record Control Semant
Cancel	Save

## Thesauri

A thesaurus describes the semantic rules that govern the meaning of words in a MARC record. The thesaurus code, which indicates the specific thesaurus that should control a MARC record, is encoded in a fixed field using the mnemonic Subj in the authority record. Eleven thesauri associated with the Library of Congress control set exist by default in the staff client.

To access an existing thesaurus, click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Control Sets, and choose the hyperlinked thesaurus that you want to access, or click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Thesauri.

## Add a Thesaurus

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Control Sets, and choose the hyperlinked thesaurus that you want to access, or click Admin → Server Administration → Authority Thesauri.
2. Click New Thesaurus.
3. Add a Thesaurus Code. Enter any single, upper case character. This character will be entered in the fixed fields of the MARC record.
4. Add a Name to the thesaurus. Enter any number of characters.
5. Add a Description of the thesaurus. Enter any number of characters.



**Thesauri**

Showing only thesauri linked to control set: [\(102\) Song Title Index / Authority Record Control Semantics for Song Titles](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#)

Thesaurus Code	Control Set
✓	

Thesaurus Code	<input type="text" value="A"/>
Control Set	<input type="text" value="102"/>
Name	<input type="text" value="Song Title Headings"/>
Description	<input type="text" value="Unique headings for song titles"/>
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/>	

## Authority Fields

Authority fields indicate the tags and subfields that should be entered in the authority record. Authority fields also enable you to specify the type of data that should be entered in a tag. For example, in an authority record governed by a Library of Congress control set, the 100 tag would contain a "Heading - Personal Name." Authority fields also enable you to create the corresponding tag in the bibliographic record that would contain the same data.

### Create an Authority Field

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Control Sets.
2. Click Authority Fields. The number in parentheses indicates the number of authority fields that have been created for the control set.
3. Click New Authority Field.
4. Add a Name to the authority field. Enter any number of characters.
5. Add a Description to describe the type of data that should be entered in this tag. Enter any number of characters.
6. Select a Main Entry if you are linking the tag(s) to another entry.
7. Add a Tag in the authority record.
8. Add a subfield in the authority record. Multiple subfields should be entered without commas or spaces.
9. Add a Non-filing indicator (either 1 or 2) to denote which indicator contains non-filing information. Leave empty if not applicable.
10. Click Save.

### Authority Fields

New Authority Field
Delete Selected

Showing only authority fields linked to control set: [\(1\) LoC / Library of Congress standard authority record control semantics](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

✓	#	Name	Description	Main Entry	Control Set	Tag	Subfield List	Heading Field	Joiner	Linking Subfield	Non-filing Indicator	Subfield List for Display	Controlled Bib Fields	Axes
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Heading -- Personal Name			LoC	100	abcdefghijklm					abcdefghijklm	<a href="#">100</a> , <a href="#">600</a> , <a href="#">700</a> , <a href="#">800</a>	<a href="#">Author</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	Heading -- Corporate Name										abcdefghijklm	<a href="#">110</a> , <a href="#">610</a> , <a href="#">710</a> , <a href="#">810</a>	<a href="#">Author</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	Heading -- Meeting Name										abcdefghijklm	<a href="#">111</a> , <a href="#">611</a> , <a href="#">711</a> , <a href="#">811</a>	<a href="#">Author</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	Heading -- Uniform Title										abcdefghijklm	<a href="#">130</a> , <a href="#">240</a> , <a href="#">630</a> , <a href="#">730</a> , <a href="#">830</a>	<a href="#">Title</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	Heading -- Topical Term										abvxyz	<a href="#">650</a>	<a href="#">Subject</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	Heading -- Geographic Name										avxyz	<a href="#">651</a>	<a href="#">Subject</a>
		Heading												

Name
Heading -- Personal Name

Description

Main Entry

Control Set
1

Tag
100

Subfield List
abcdefghijklmnpqrstvxyz

Heading Field
4

Joiner

Linking Subfield

Non-filing Indicator

Subfield List for Display
abcdefghijklmnpqrstvxyz

Cancel
Save

- 11Create the corresponding tag in the bibliographic record that should contain this information.  
Click the None link in the Controlled Bib Fields column.
- 12Click New Control Set Bib Field.
- 13Add the corresponding tag in the bibliographic record.
- 14Click Save.

### Control Set Bib Fields

Showing only control set bib fields linked to authority field: [Song Title \(660 1abcdef\) Song Title](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	Tag

Tag
640

Controlling Authority Field
1001

Cancel
Save

# Browse Axes

Authority records can be browsed, by default, along five axes: author, series, subject, title, and topic. Use the Browse Axes feature to create additional axes.

## Create a new Browse Axis

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Browse Axes
2. Click New Browse Axis.
3. Add a code. Do not enter any spaces.
4. Add a name to the axis that will appear in the OPAC. Enter any number of characters.
5. Add a description of the axis. Enter any number of characters.
6. Add a sorter attribute. The sorter attribute indicates the order in which the results will be displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'Browse Axes' interface. At the top, there are buttons for 'New Browse Axis' and 'Delete Selected'. Below is a table with columns: Code, Name, Description, and Sorter Attribute. The table lists five existing axes: author, songtitle, subject, title, and topic. A modal form is open in the center, allowing the user to create a new axis. The form has fields for Code (songtitle), Name (Song Title), Description (Song title search), and Sorter Attribute (Title). There are 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons at the bottom of the modal.

Code	Name	Description	Sorter Attribute
author	Author	Author axis	Title
songtitle	Song Title	Song title search	Title
subject	Subject	Subject axis	Title
title	Title	Title axis	Title
topic	Topic	Topic Subject axis	Title

Code:

Name:

Description:

Sorter Attribute:

7. Assign the axis to an authority so that users can find the authority record when browsing authorities. Click Administration → Server Administration → Authority Control Sets.
8. Choose the control set to which you will add the axis. Click Authority Fields.

The screenshot shows the 'Control Sets' interface. At the top, there are buttons for 'New Control Set' and 'Delete Selected'. Below is a table with columns: #, Name, Description, and Other Properties. The table lists one control set: 1, LoC, Library of Congress standard authority record control semantics. A red arrow points to the 'Other Properties' column, which contains a link to 'Authority Fields (48)'.

#	Name	Description	Other Properties
1	LoC	Library of Congress standard authority record control semantics	<a href="#">Thesauri (394)</a> <a href="#">Authority Fields (48)</a>

9. Click the link in the Axes column of the tag of your choice.
10. Click New Browse Axis-Authority Field Map.

11Select an Axis from the drop down menu.

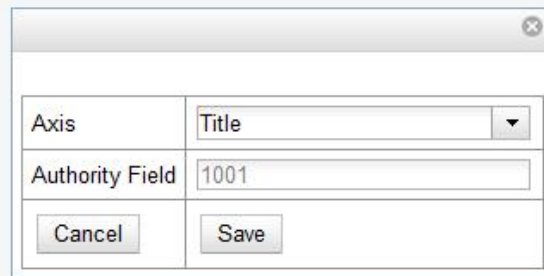
12Click Save.

### Browse Axis-Authority Field Maps

Showing only browse axis-authority field maps linked to authority field: [Song Title \(660 †abcdef\) Song Title](#)

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓ Axis



Axis	Title
Authority Field	1001
Cancel	Save

### Permissions to use this Feature

To use authority control sets, you will need the following permissions:

- CREATE\_AUTHORITY\_CONTROL\_SET
- UPDATE\_AUTHORITY\_CONTROL\_SET
- DELETE\_AUTHORITY\_CONTROL\_SET

# Chapter 22. Call Number Prefixes and Suffixes

You can configure call number prefixes and suffixes in the Admin module. This feature ensures more precise cataloging because each cataloger will have access to an identical drop down menu of call number prefixes and suffixes that are used at his library. In addition, it may streamline cataloging workflow. Catalogers can use a drop down menu to enter call number prefixes and suffixes rather than entering them manually. You can also run reports on call number prefixes and suffixes that would facilitate collection development and maintenance.

## Configure call number prefixes

Call number prefixes are codes that precede a call number.

To configure call number prefixes:

1. Select Administration → Server Administration → Call Number Prefixes.
2. Click New Prefix.
3. Enter the call number label that will appear on the item.
4. Select the owning library from the drop down menu. Staff at this library, and its descendant org units, with the appropriate permissions, will be able to apply this call number prefix.
5. Click Save.

**Call Number Suffixes**

Context Org Unit: APEX

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	Label	Owning Library
<input type="checkbox"/>	Copy 1	APEX

Label

Copy 2

Owning Library

APEX

Cancel

Save

# Configure call number suffixes

Call number suffixes are codes that succeed a call number.

To configure call number suffixes:

1. Select Administration → Server Administration → Call Number Suffixes.
2. Click New Suffix.
3. Enter the call number label that will appear on the item.
4. Select the owning library from the drop down menu. Staff at this library, and its descendant org units, with the appropriate permissions, will be able to apply this call number suffix.
5. Click Save.

The screenshot shows the 'Call Number Prefixes' interface. At the top, there is a 'Context Org Unit' dropdown menu set to 'APEX'. Below this are 'Back' and 'Next' links. A table lists existing suffixes with checkboxes, labels, and owning libraries. The 'E' suffix is selected. A modal dialog is open for adding a new suffix, with 'Label' set to 'REF' and 'Owning Library' set to 'APEX'. The dialog has 'Cancel' and 'Save' buttons.

✓	Label	Owning Library
<input type="checkbox"/>	YA	CONS
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	E	CONS

Label	REF
Owning Library	APEX
Cancel	Save

## Apply Call Number Prefixes and Suffixes

You can apply call number prefixes and suffixes to items from a pre-configured list in the Holdings Editor.

# Chapter 23. Statistical Categories Editor

This is where you configure your statistical categories (stat cats). Stat cats are a way to save and report on additional information that doesn't fit elsewhere in Evergreen's default records. It is possible to have stat cats for copies or patrons.

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Statistical Categories Editor.
2. To create a new stat cat, enter the name of the category and select either patron or copy from the Type dropdown menu. Each category type has a number of options you may set.

## Copy Statistical Categories

Copy stat cats appear in the Holdings Editor. You might use copy stat cats to track books you have bought from a specific vendor, or donations.

An example of the Create a new statistical category controls for copies:

Statistical Category Editor				Welcome egadmin	
Create a new statistical category					
Enter the name:	<input type="text"/>	Owning Library:	CONS		
OPAC Visibility:	On <input type="radio"/> Off <input checked="" type="radio"/>	Type:	Copy		
Required:	On <input type="radio"/> Off <input checked="" type="radio"/>	Archive with Circs	On <input type="radio"/> Off <input checked="" type="radio"/>		
SIP Field:	No SIP Export	SIP Format:	<input type="text"/>		
<a href="#">Create new statistical category</a>					

- OPAC Visibility: Should the category be displayed in the OPAC?
- Required: Must the category be assigned a value when editing the item attributes?
- Archive with Circs: Should the category and its values for the copy be archived with aged circulation data?
- SIP Field: Select the SIP field identifier that will contain the category and its value
- SIP Format: Specify the SIP format string

Some sample copy stat cats:

Focus Location: BR1

[Copy Statistical Categories](#) [Patron Statistical Categories](#)

\* To edit or view information about an entry, click on the entry in the drop-down menu  
\*\* Some sip fields may only be valid on one stat cat. Entries using them may not save.

Statistical Category Name	Owning Library	OPAC Visibility	Required	SIP Field	SIP Format	Circ Archive	Entries	Add Entry	Edit
Gift Item	Example Consortium	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	No	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Kids Books	Example Consortium	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	(none)	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Vendor	Example Consortium	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	Amazon	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>

To add an entry, select Add. Due to a known bug, individual entries for stat cats cannot be edited in the web client.

Stat cats can be edited or deleted by clicking on Edit.

This is how the copy stat cats appear in the Holdings Editor:

The screenshot shows the 'Copy Editor' interface with several tabs: Templates, Apply, Delete, Import, Export, Save, and Reset. Below these are four main sections: Identification, Location (1), Circulation (2), and Miscellaneous (3). The Statistics (4) section is highlighted with a red box and contains a table with the following data:

Library Filter	Count
CONS : Gift Item	<Unset> 1 copy
CONS : Kids Books	<Unset> 1 copy
CONS : Vendor	<Unset> 1 copy

You can use the Filter by Library selector to display copy stat cats owned by a particular library:

## Patron Statistical Categories

Patron stat cats can be used to keep track of information such as a patron's school affiliation, membership in a group like the Friends of the Library, or patron preferences. They appear in the fourth section of the Patron Registration or Edit Patron screen, under the label Statistical Categories.

An example of the Create a new statistical category controls for patrons:

The screenshot shows the 'Statistical Category Editor' form. It includes the following fields and controls:

- Enter the name:** A text input field.
- Owning Library:** A dropdown menu with 'CONS' selected.
- OPAC Visibility:** Radio buttons for 'On' and 'Off' (selected).
- Type:** A dropdown menu with 'Patron' selected.
- Required:** Radio buttons for 'On' and 'Off' (selected).
- Archive with Circs:** Radio buttons for 'On' and 'Off' (selected).
- Allow Free Text:** Radio buttons for 'On' and 'Off' (selected).
- Show in Summary:** Radio buttons for 'On' and 'Off' (selected).
- SIP Field:** A dropdown menu with 'No SIP Export' selected.
- SIP Format:** A text input field.
- Create new statistical category:** A button at the bottom.

- **OPAC Visibility:** Should the category be displayed in the OPAC?
- **Required:** Must the category be assigned a value when registering a new patron or editing an existing one?
- **Archive with Circs:** Should the category and its values for the patron be archived with aged circulation data?
- **Allow Free Text:** May the person registering/editing the patron information supply their own value for the category?
- **Show in Summary:** Display the category and its value in the patron summary view?
- **SIP Field:** Select the SIP field identifier that will contain the category and its value



- SIP Format: Specify the SIP format string



## WARNING

If you make a category required and also disallow free text, make sure that you populate an entry list for the category so that the user may select a value. Failure to do so will result in an unsubmittable patron registration/edit form!

Some sample patron stat cats:

Focus Location:

[Copy Statistical Categories](#) [Patron Statistical Categories](#)

\* To edit or view information about an entry, click on the entry in the drop-down menu  
 \*\* Some sip fields may only be valid on one stat cat. Entries using them may not save.

Statistical Category Name	Owning Library	OPAC Visibility	Required	Show in Summary	Allow Free Text	SIP Field	SIP Format	Circ Archive	Entries	Add Entry	Edit
High School	Example System 1	Off	Off	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	West High School*	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Preferred Library	Example System 1	Off	Off	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	Main Library	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Preferred Transportation	Example Consortium	Off	Off	Off	On	No SIP		Off	(none)	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Proof of residence document	Example Branch 1	Off	On	Off	On	No SIP		Off	(none)	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>
Provide due date slip	Example Consortium	Off	On	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	No*	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>

To add an entry, click on Add in the category row under the Add Entry column:

Statistical Category Name	Owning Library	OPAC Visibility	Required	Show in Summary	Allow Free Text	SIP Field	SIP Format	Circ Archive	Entries	Add Entry	Edit
High School	Example System 1	Off	Off	Off	Off	No SIP		Off	West High School*	<a href="#">Add</a>	<a href="#">Edit</a>

Enter the value of the new entry:   ☐ Default entry for

Stat cats can be edited or deleted by clicking on Edit.

Due to a known bug, individual entries for stat cats cannot be edited in the web client.

An organizational unit (consortium, library system branch library, sub library, etc.) may create their own categories and entries, or supplement categories defined by a higher-level org unit with their own entries.

An entry can be set as the default entry for a category and for an org unit. If an entry is set as the default, it will be automatically selected in the patron edit screen, provided no other value has been previously set for the patron. Only one default may be set per category for any given org unit.

Lower-level org unit defaults override defaults set for higher-level org units; but in the absence of a default set for a given org unit, the nearest parent org unit default will be selected.

Default entries for the focus location org unit are marked with an asterisk in the entry dropdowns.

This is how patron stat cats appear in the patron registration/edit screen:

Statistical Categories		
	High School	West High School ▼
	Preferred Library	▼
	Preferred Transportation	▼
	Proof of residence document	▼
	Provide due date slip	No ▼

The yellow highlight denotes a stat cat that is required, and you will not be allowed to save or create a patron unless a value is entered.

To remove a stat cat value, select the text in the right-hand box and use your keyboard's backspace or delete key.

# Chapter 24. MARC Import Remove Fields

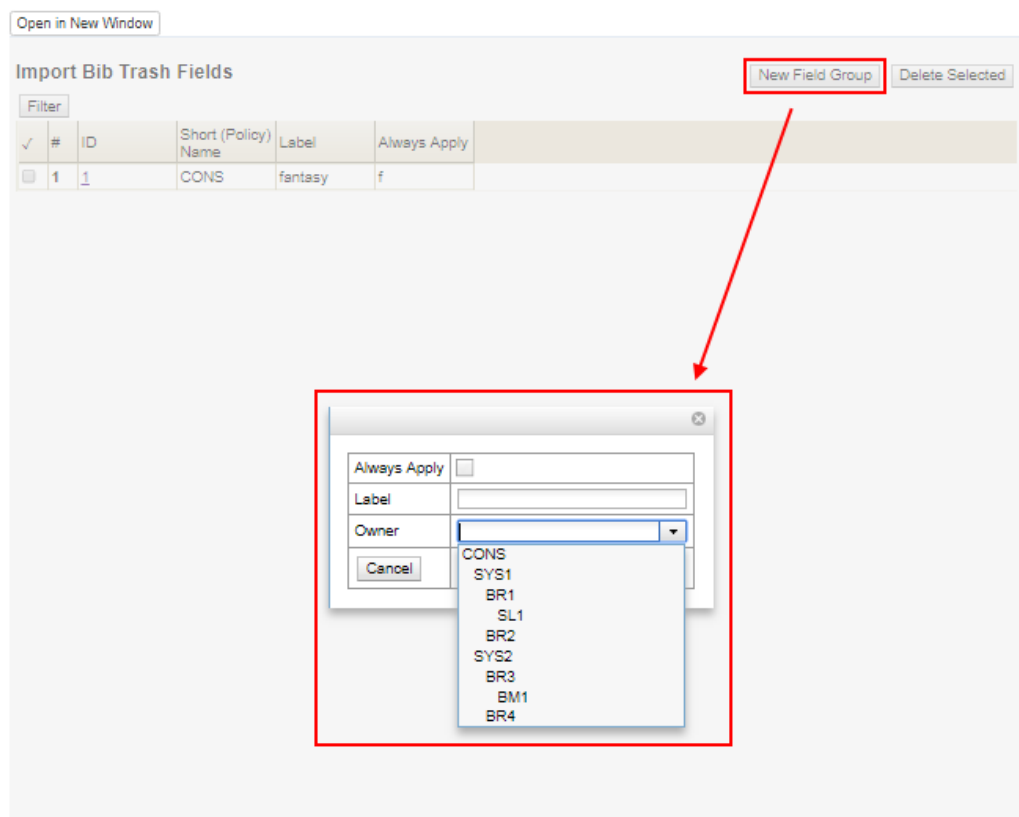
MARC Import Remove Fields allows staff to configure MARC tags to be automatically removed from bibliographic records when they are imported into Evergreen. This feature allows specific MARC tags to be removed from records that are imported through three different interfaces:

- Cataloging → Import Record from Z39.50
- Cataloging → MARC Batch Import/Export
- Acquisitions → Load MARC Order Records

## Create a MARC Import Remove Fields profile

To create a MARC Import Remove Fields profile, go to Administration → Server Administration → MARC Import Remove Fields.

1. Click New Field Group.
2. Assign the Field Group a Label. This label will appear in the import interfaces.
3. Assign an Org Unit Owner.
4. Check the box next to Always Apply if you want Evergreen to apply this Remove Fields profile to all MARC records that are imported through the three affected interfaces. If you do not select Always Apply, staff will have the option to choose which Remove Fields profile to use when importing records.
5. Click Save.
6. The profile that you created will now appear in the list of MARC Import Remove Fields.
7. Click on the hyperlinked ID number. This will bring you into the Remove Fields profile to configure the MARC tags to be removed.
8. Click New Field.
9. In the Field, enter the MARC tag to be removed.
- 10 Click Save.
- 11 Add New Fields until you have configured all the tags needed for this profile.
- 12 Click Return to Groups to go back to the list of Remove Field profiles.



## Import Options

The Label for each of the MARC Import Remove Fields profiles will appear on the three affected import screens. To select a profile, check the box next to the desired Label before importing the records.

Cataloging → Import Record from Z39.50



## Acquisitions → Load MARC Order Records

**Upload**

Create Purchase Order☐

Activate Purchase Order☐

Provider

Context Org Unit

Add to Selection List

Fiscal Year

Upload to Queue

Record Match Set

Merge Profile

Import Non-Matching Records☐

Merge On Exact Match (901c)☐

Merge On Single Match☐

Merge On Best Match☐

Best/Single Match Minimum Quality Ratio  New Record Quality / Quality of Best Match

Insufficient Quality Fall-Through Profile

Remove MARC Field Groups

☐ 970s (CONS)  
☐ Subjects (CONS)

Load Items for Imported Records☐

Or create a new queue

Record Source

File to Upload:

## Permissions to use this Feature

The following permissions are required to use this feature:

- CREATE\_IMPORT\_TRASH\_FIELD
- UPDATE\_IMPORT\_TRASH\_FIELD
- DELETE\_IMPORT\_TRASH\_FIELD

# Chapter 25. Item Tags (Digital Bookplates)

Item Tags allow staff to apply custom, pre-defined labels or tags to items. Item tags are visible in the public catalog and are searchable in both the staff client and public catalog based on configuration. This feature was designed to be used for Digital Bookplates to attach donation or memorial information to items, but may be used for broader purposes to tag items.

## Administration

New Permissions:

- ADMIN\_COPY\_TAG\_TYPES: required to create a new tag type under Server Administration→Item Tag Types
- ADMIN\_COPY\_TAG: required to create a new tag under Local Administration→Item Tags



The existing permission UPDATE\_COPY is required to assign a tag to a item

New Library Settings:

- OPAC: Enable Digital Bookplate Search: when set to True for a given org unit, the digital bookplate search option will be available in the catalog.

## Creating item Tags

There are two components to this feature: Item Tag Types and Item Tags.

Item Tag Types are used to define the type of tag, such as “Bookplates” or “Local History Notes”, as well as the organizational unit scope for use of the tag type.

Item Tags are associated with a Item Tag Type and are used to configure the list of tags that can be applied to copies, such as a list of memorial or donation labels, that are applicable to a particular organizational unit.

## Create Item Tag Types

1. Go to Administration→Server Administration→Item Tag Types.
2. In the upper left hand corner, click New Record. A dialog box will appear. Assign the following to create a new Item Tag Type:
  - a. Code: a code to identify the item tag type.

- b. Label: a label that will appear in drop down menus to identify the item tag type.
- c. Owner: the organizational unit that can see and use the item tag type.
3. Click Save and the new Item Tag Type will appear in the list. Next create the associated Item Tags.

The screenshot shows a 'Copy Tag Types' dialog box. It contains the following fields:

- Code:** memorial\_notes
- Label:** Memorial Notes
- Owner:** SYS1

At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: 'Save' (blue) and 'Cancel' (orange).

Copy Tag Types			
<div> New Record <div> <div>⏪</div> <div>⏴</div> <div>⏵</div> <div>⏩</div> </div> <div> Actions Rows 25 Page 1 </div> </div>			
#	Code	Label	Owner
1	bookplate	Digital Bookplate	Example Consortium
2	local_hist	Local History Note	Example Consortium
3	memorial_notes	Memorial Notes	Example System 1
4	weeding	Weeding statuses	Example Consortium

## Create Item Tags

1. Go to Administration→Local Administration→Item Tags.
2. In the upper left hand corner, click New Record. A dialog box will appear. Assign the following to create a new Item Tag:
  - a. Item Tag Type: select the Item Tag Type with which you want to associate the new Item Tag.
  - b. Label: assign a label to the new item tag.
  - c. Value: assign a value to the new item tag. This will display in the catalog.
  - d. Staff Note: a note may be added to guide staff in when to apply the item tag.
  - e. Is OPAC Visible?: If a item tag is OPAC Visible, it can be searched for and viewed in the OPAC and the staff catalog. If a item tag is not OPAC Visible, it can only be searched for and viewed in the staff catalog.



f. Owner: select the organization unit at which this tag can be seen and used.

3. Click Save and the new Item Tag will appear in the list.

Copy Tags

ID

Copy Tag Type: Memorial Notes

Label: Jane Smith

Value: Donated in Memory of Jane

Staff Note: apply to all items acquired

Is OPAC Visible? ☒

Owner: BR1

Save Cancel

Copy Tags						
Filter by Owning Library: BR1						
New Record						
Actions Rows 25 Page 1						
#	Owner	Tag Type	Label	Is OPAC Visible?	Staff Note	Value
1	Example Branch 1	Digital Bookplate	Gift from the Friends of the ...	true		Gift from the Friends of the ...
2	Example Branch 1	Memorial Notes	Jane Smith	true	apply to all items acquired a...	Donated in Memory of Jane...
3	Example Branch 1	Local History Note	Local Genealogy (Reed)	true	use for items acquired as p...	Reed Genealogy Collection
4	Example Branch 1	Digital Bookplate	Patton collection	false		Bequest of Mrs. Patton

## Managing Item Tags

### Editing Tags

Existing item tags can be edited by selecting a tag and clicking Actions→Edit Record or right-clicking on a tag and selecting Edit Record. The dialog box will appear and you can modify the item tag. Click Save to save any changes. Changes will be propagated to any items that the tag has been attached to.

### Deleting Tags

Existing item tags can be deleted by selecting a tag and clicking Actions→Delete Record or right-clicking on a tag and selecting Delete Record. Deleting a tag will delete the tag from any items it was attached to in the catalog.

# Chapter 26. MARC Record Attributes

The MARC Record Attribute Definitions support the ingesting, indexing, searching, filtering, and delivering of bibliographic record attributes.

To Access the MARC Record Attributes, click Administration → Server Administration → MARC Record Attributes

## Managing Fixed Field Drop-down Context Menus

The MARC Editor includes Fixed Field Drop-down Context Menus, which make it easier for catalogers to select the right values for fixed fields in both Bibliographic and Authority records. You can use the MARC Record Attributes interface to modify these dropdowns to make them better suited for catalogers in your consortium.

To edit these menus, you can follow these steps:

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → MARC Record Attributes.
2. If there's not already a dropdown for your fixed field, click New Attr. Definition and fill out the form using other fixed field attribute definitions as a model.
3. If you can find an attribute definition for your fixed field in the list, click the "Manage" link in the Coded Value Maps column.
4. Click New Map.
5. In the SVF Attribute field, type the name of the Attribute you identified in steps 2-3.
6. In the code field, type the actual value that will go into the fixed field (typically 1-4 characters). You can add an option to keep that fixed field empty by typing a space into this field.
7. In the value field, type the short description you'd like your catalogers to see in the dropdown menu.
8. Optional: add a longer description of this value in the Description field.
9. Check the OPAC Visible checkbox.

## Multi Valued Fields and Composite Record Attributes

Multi Valued Fields and Composite Record Attributes expands upon the Record Attribute Definitions feature to include capturing all occurrences of multi-valued elements in a record. Multi Valued Fields allows users to say that a bibliographic record contains multiple entries for a particular record attribute. Composite Record Attributes supports the application of a more complicated and nested form of structure to a record attribute definition.

# Multi Valued Fields

Multi Valued Fields allows for the capturing of multi-valued elements of a bibliographic record. Through the use of Multi Valued Fields, Evergreen recognizes that records are capable of storing multiple values. Multi Valued Fields are represented in the Record Attribute Definitions interface by a column named Multi-valued?. With Multi-valued? set to True, Evergreen will recognize the bibliographic records in the database that have multiple values mapping to the record attribute definition; it will also track and search on those values in the catalog. This feature will be particularly handy for bibliographic records representing a Blu-ray / DVD combo pack, since both format types can be displayed in the OPAC (if both formats were cataloged in the record).

Record Attribute Definitions New Attr. Definition Delete Selected

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

✓	#	Name	Label	Composite attribute?	Description	Filter?	Fixed Field	Format	Joiner	MARC Subfields	MARC Tag	Multi-valued?	Physical Characteristic	Sorter?	Starting Position	String Length	XPath	Coded Value Maps
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	icon_format	OPAC Format Icons	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	ills	Ills	False		True	Ills					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	indx	Indx	False		True	Indx					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	item_form	Form	False		True	Form					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	item_lang	Lang	False		True	Lang					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	item_type	Type	False		True	Type					False		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	language	Language (2.0 compat version)	False		True	Lang					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	lit_form	LitF	False		True	LitF					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	mr_hold_form	Metarecord Hold Formats	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	mrec	MRec	False		True	MRec					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	pub_status	DtSt	False		True	DtSt					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	pubdate	Pub Date	False		False	Date1					False		True				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	search_format	Search Format	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>

To edit an existing record attribute definition and set the Multi-valued? field to True:

1. Click Administration on the menu bar
2. Click Server Administration, then click MARC Record Attributes
3. Double-click on the row of the record attribute definition that needs to be edited
4. Select the Multi-valued? checkbox
5. Click Save

Record Attribute Definitions New Attr. Definition Delete Selected

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

✓	#	Name	Label	Composite attribute?	Description	Filter?	Fixed Field	Format	Joiner	MARC Subfields	MARC Tag	Multi-valued?	Physical Characteristic	Sorter?	Starting Position	String Length	XPath	Coded Value Maps
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	icon_format	OPAC Format Icons	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	ills	Ills	False		True	Ills					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	indx	Indx	False		True	Indx					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	item_form	Form	False		True	For					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	item_lang	Lang	False		True	Lar					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	item_type	Type	False		True	Typ					False		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	language	Language (2.0 compat version)	False		True	La					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	lit_form	LitF	False		True	LitF					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	mr_hold_form	Metarecord Hold Formats	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	mrec	MRec	False		True	MR					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	pub_status	DtSt	False		True	DtS					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	pubdate	Pub Date	False		False	Dat					False		True				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	search_format	Search Format	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>

Name:

Label:

Composite attribute?: ☒

Description:

Filter?: ☒

Fixed Field:

Format:

Joiner:

MARC Subfields:

MARC Tag:

Multi-valued?: ☒

Physical Characteristic:

Sorter?:

Starting Position:

String Length:

XPath:

## Composite Record Attributes

Composite Record Attributes build on top of Evergreen's ability to support record attributes that contain multiple entries. The Composite Record Attributes feature enables administrators to take

a record attribute definition and apply a more complicated and nested form of structure to that particular record attribute. Two new Record Attribute Definitions columns have been added to facilitate the management of the Composite Record Attributes. The Composite attribute? column designates whether or not a particular record attribute definition is also a composite record attribute. The Coded Value Maps column contains a Manage link in each row that allows users to manage the Coded Value Maps for the record attributes.

Record Attribute Definitions

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

[New Attr. Definition](#) [Delete Selected](#)

✓	#	Name	Label	Composite attribute?	Description	Filter?	Fixed Field	Format	Joiner	MARC Subfields	MARC Tag	Multi-valued?	Physical Characteristic	Sorter?	Starting Position	String Length	XPath	Coded Value Maps
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	icon_format	OPAC Format Icons	True		True						True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	ills	Ills	False		True	Ills					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	indx	Indx	False		True	Indx					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	item_form	Form	False		True	Form					True		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>

## Coded Value Maps

To manage the Coded Value Maps of a particular record attribute definition, click the Manage link located under the Coded Value Maps column for that record attribute. This will open the Coded Value Maps interface. What administrators see on the Coded Value Maps screen does not define the structure of the composite record attribute; they must go into the Composite Attribute Entry Definitions screen to view this information.

### Coded Value Maps

Coded Value Maps

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

[New Map](#) [Delete Selected](#) [Clone Selected](#)

Record Attribute Type: [OPAC Format Icons](#)

✓	#	SVF Attribute	Code	Value	Description	OPAC Visible	Search Label	Is Simple Selector	Concept URI	Composite Definition
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	OPAC Format Icons	blu-ray	Blu-ray		True	Blu-ray	False		<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	OPAC Format Icons	book	Book		True	Book	False		<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	OPAC Format Icons	braille	Braille		True	Braille	False		<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	OPAC Format Icons	casaudiobook	Cassette audiobook		True	Cassette audiobook	False		<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	-	OPAC Format		Audiocassette		-	Audiocassette	-		...

Within the Coded Value Maps screen, there is a column named Composite Definition. The Composite Definition column contains a Manage link that allows users to configure and to edit Composite Record Attribute definitions. In order to enable the Manage link (i.e. have the Manage link display as an option under the Composite Definition column), the Composite attribute? column (located back in the Record Attributes Definition page) must be set to True.

To edit an existing record attribute definition and set the Composite attribute? field to True:

1. Click Administration on the menu bar
2. Click Server Administration, then click MARC Record Attributes
3. Double-click on the row of the record attribute definition that needs to be edited
4. Select the Composite attribute? checkbox
5. Click Save

Record Attribute Definitions

Record Attribute Definitions

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

✓	#	Name	Label	Composite attribute?	Description	Filter?	Fixed Field	Physical Characteristic?	Sorter?	Starting Position	String Length	XPath	Coded Value Maps
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	icon_format	OPAC Format Icons	True		True			False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	mr_hold_form	Metarecord Hold Formats	True		True			False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	search_format	Search Formats	True		True			False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	ills	Ills	False		True	Ills		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	indx	Indx	False		True	Indx		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	item_form	Form	False		True	Form		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	item_lang	Lang	False		True	Lang		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	item_type	Type	False		True	Type		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	language	Language (2.0 compat version)	False		True	Lang		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	lit_form	LitF	False		True	LitF		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	mrec	MRec	False		True	MRec		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	pub_status	DiSt	False		True	DiSt		False				<a href="#">Manage</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	pubdate	Pub Date	False		False	Date1		True				<a href="#">Manage</a>

Name: icon\_format

Label: OPAC Format Icons

Composite attribute?: ☒

Description:

Filter?: ☒

Fixed Field:

Format:

Joiner:

MARC Subfields:

MARC Tag:

Multi-valued?: ☒

Physical Characteristic:

Sorter?: ☐

Starting Position:

String Length:

XPath:

Cancel Save

Now that the Composite attribute? value is set to True, click on the Manage link located under the Coded Value Maps column for the edited record attribute definition. Back in the Coded Value Maps screen, a Manage link should now be exposed under the Composite Definition column. Clicking on a specific coded value's Manage link will take the user into the Composite Attribute Entry Definitions screen for that specified coded value.

## Composite Attribute Entry Definitions

The Composite Attribute Entry Definitions screen is where administrators can locally define and edit Composite Record Attributes for specific coded values. For example: administrators can further refine and distinguish the way a “book” should be defined within their database, by bringing together the right combination of attributes together to truly define what a “book” is in their database.

The top of the Composite Attribute Entry Definitions screen shows a parenthetically defined view of the Composite Data Expression. Below the Composite Data Expression is the Composite Data Tree. The Composite Data Tree is structured off of Boolean Operators, including the support of NOT operations. This nested form can be as deeply defined as it needs to be within the site's database.

Composite Attribute Entry Definitions

Record Attribute: OPAC Format Icons  
Coded Value: book / Book

[Return To Coded Value Maps](#)

Composite Data Expression

( Language material OR Manuscript language material ) AND NOT ( Microfilm OR Microfiche OR Microopaque OR Large print OR Braille OR Online OR Direct electronic OR Regular print reproduction OR Electronic ) AND ( Monographic component part OR Collection OR Subunit OR Monograph/item )

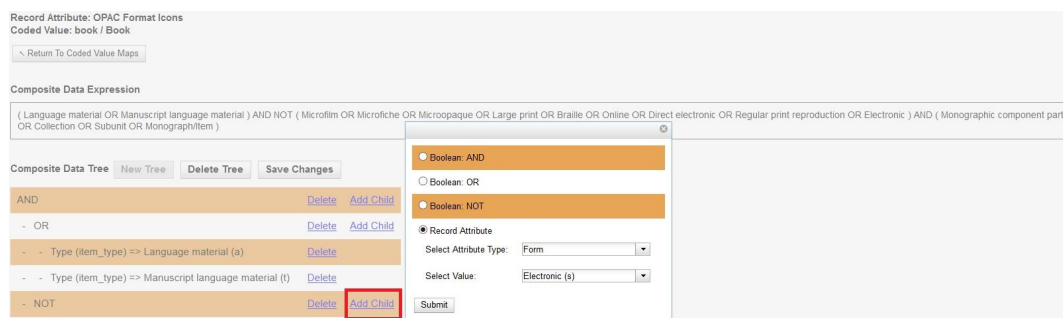
Composite Data Tree [New Tree](#) [Delete Tree](#) [Save Changes](#)

- AND [Delete](#) [Add Child](#)
  - OR [Delete](#) [Add Child](#)
    - Type (item\_type) => Language material (a) [Delete](#)
    - Type (item\_type) => Manuscript language material (l) [Delete](#)
- NOT [Delete](#) [Add Child](#)
  - OR [Delete](#) [Add Child](#)
    - Form (item\_form) => Microfilm (a) [Delete](#)
    - Form (item\_form) => Microfiche (b) [Delete](#)
    - Form (item\_form) => Microopaque (c) [Delete](#)

To modify the Composite Attribute Entry Definition, any Boolean Operator can be deleted or have a coded value appended to it. The appended coded value can be any number of Coded Value Maps from any other Record Attribute Definition. So, administrators can choose from all the other existing record attribute definitions and create new nested structures to define entirely new data types.

To modify the Composite Attribute Entry Definition:

1. Click Add Child for the specific Boolean Operator that needs to be modified, and a new window will open
2. Select which Record Attribute needs to be represented in the structure under that particular Boolean Operator
3. Select the Attribute Type from the dropdown options
4. Select the Value of the Attribute Type from the dropdown options (dropdown options will be based on the Attribute Type selected)
5. Click Submit
6. The Composite Data Expression should now include the modification
7. Once all modifications have been made, click Save Changes on the Composite Attribute Entry Definitions page





## Search and Icon Formats

### Search and Icon Formats







The table below shows all the search and icon formats. In some cases they vary slightly, with the icon format being more restrictive. This is so that things such as a search for "All Books" will include Large Print books yet Large Print books will not show both a "Book" and "Large Print Book" icon.

In the table below "Icon Format Only" portions of the definition are italicized and in square brackets: [Icon format only data]

The definitions use the [fixed field types](#) at the end of this document.

Icon	Search Label/Icon Label	Definition
	Blu-ray	VR Format:s
	All books/Book	Item Type: a,t Bib Level: a,c,d,m

		NOT: Item Form: a,b,c,f,o,q,r,s [,d]
	Braille	Item Type: a Item Form: f
	Cassette audiobook	Item Type: i SR Format: l
	Audiocassette music recording	Item Type: j SR Format: l
	CD audiobook	Item Type: i SR Format: f
	CD music recording	Item Type: j SR Format: f
	DVD	VR Format: v
	E-audio	Item Type: i Item Form: o,q,s
	E-book	Item Type: a,t Bib Level: a,c,d,m Item Form: o,q,s
	Equipment, games, toys	Item Type: r
	E-video	Item Type: g Item Form: o,q,s
	Kit	Item Type: o,p
	Large print book	Item Type: a,t Bib Level: a,c,d,m Item Form: d
	Map	Item Type: e,f
	Microform	Item Form: a,b,c
	All music/Music sound recording (unknown format)	Item Type: j [NOT: SR Format: a,b,c,d,e,f,l]
	Phonograph music recording	Item Type: j

		SR Format: a,b,c,d,e
	Phonograph spoken recording	Item Type: i SR Format: a,b,c,d,e
	Picture	Item type: k
	Music score	Item type: c,d
	Serials and magazines	Bib Level: b,s
	Software and video games	Item Type: m
	VHS	VR Format: b

## Record Types

This table shows the record types currently used in determining elements of search and icon formats. They are based on a combination of the MARC Record Type (LDR 06) and Bibliographic Level (LDR 07) fixed fields.

Record Type	LDR 06	LDR 07
BKS	a,t	a,c,d,m
MAP	e,f	a,b,c,d,i,m,s
MIX	p	c,d,i
REC	i,j	a,b,c,d,i,m,s
SCO	c,d	a,b,c,d,i,m,s
SER	a	b,i,s
VIS	g,k,r,o	a,b,c,d,i,m,s

## Fixed Field Types

This table details the fixed field types currently used for determining search and icon formats. See the [record types](#) section above for how the system determines them.

Label	Record Type	Tag	Position
Item Type	ANY	LDR	06
Bib Level	ANY	LDR	07
Item Format	BKS	006	06
		008	23
	MAP	006	12
		008	29



	MIX	006	06
		008	23
	REC	006	06
		008	23
	SCO	006	06
		008	23
	SER	006	06
		008	23
	VIS	006	12
		008	29
SR Format	ANY	007s	03
VR Format	ANY	007v	04

# Chapter 27. Z39.50 Servers

## Restrict Z39.50 Sources by Permission Group

In Evergreen versions preceding 2.2, all users with cataloging privileges could view all of the Z39.50 servers that were available for use in the staff client. In Evergreen version 2.2, you can use a permission to restrict users' access to Z39.50 servers. You can apply a permission to the Z39.50 servers to restrict access to that server, and then assign that permission to users or groups so that they can access the restricted servers.

### Administrative Settings

You can add a permission to limit use of Z39.50 servers, or you can use an existing permission.



You must be authorized to add permission types at the database level to add a new permission.

Add a new permission:

- 1) Create a permission at the database level.
- 2) Click Administration → Server Administration → Permissions to add a permission to the staff client.
- 3) In the New Permission field, enter the text that describes the new permission.

[Open in New Window](#)

New Permission:

Code	Description
	Translation
ABORT_REMOTE_TRANSIT	Allow a user to abort a copy
	<input type="button" value="Translate"/> ▾

- 4) Click Add.
- 5) The new permission appears in the list of permissions.

## Restrict Z39.50 Sources by Permission Group

- 1) Click Administration → Server Administration → Z39.50 Servers
- 2) Click New Z39.50 Server, or double click on an existing Z39.50 server to restrict its use.
- 3) Select the permission that you added to restrict Z39.50 use from the drop down menu.

## Z39.50 Servers

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	Z39.50 Source	Label	Host
<input type="checkbox"/>	biblios	‡biblios.net	z3950.biblios.net
<input type="checkbox"/>	loc	Library of Congress	z3950.loc.gov
<input type="checkbox"/>	oclc	OCLC	zcat.oclc.org

Z39.50 Source	<input type="text" value="oclc"/>
Label	<input type="text" value="OCLC"/>
Host	<input type="text" value="zcat.oclc.org"/>
Port	<input type="text" value="210"/>
DB	<input type="text" value="OLUCWorldCat"/>
Record Format	<input type="text" value="FI"/>
Transmission Format	<input type="text" value="usmarc"/>
Auth	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use Permission	<input type="text" value="RESTRICT_Z39.50"/> ▼
<input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	<input type="button" value="Save"/>

4) Click Save.

5) Add the permission that you created to a user or user group so that they can access the restricted server.

Group Permissions

	Depth	Grantable
FIELD_DEF	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IMPORT_IMPORT_FIELD_DEF	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IMPORT_IMPORT_FIELD_DEF	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
IMPORT_FIELD_DEF	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
_ATTR_DEF	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
H_FIELD	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

New Mapping ▼

Save Changes

Permission: RESTRICT\_Z39.50 ▼

Depth: Consortium ▼

Grantable: ☒

Add Mapping

6) Users that log in to the staff client and have that permission will be able to see the restricted Z39.50 server.



As an alternative to creating a new permission to restrict use, you can use a preexisting permission. For example, your library uses a permission group called SuperCat, and only

members in this group should have access to a restricted Z39.50 source. Identify a permission that is unique to the SuperCat group (e.g. CREATE\_MARC) and apply that permission to the restricted Z39.50 server. Because these users are in the only group with the permission, they will be the only group w/ access to the restricted server.

## Storing Z39.50 Server Credentials

Staff have the option to apply Z39.50 login credentials to each Z39.50 server at different levels of the organizational unit hierarchy. Credentials can be set at the library branch or system level, or for an entire consortium. When credentials are set for a Z39.50 server, searches of the Z39.50 server will use the stored credentials. If a staff member provides alternate credentials in the Z39.50 search interface, the supplied credentials will override the stored ones. Staff have the ability to apply new credentials or clear existing ones in this interface. For security purposes, it is not possible for staff to retrieve or report on passwords.

To set up stored credentials for a Z39.50 server:

- 1) Go to Administration → Server Administration → Z39.50 Servers.
- 2) Select a Z39.50 Source by clicking on the hyperlinked source name. This will take you the Z39.50 Attributes for the source.
- 3) At the top of the screen, select the org unit for which you would like to configure the credentials.
- 4) Enter the Username and Password, and click Apply Credentials.

[Go Back](#) [Reload](#) [Go Forward](#) [Debug](#) [Print Page](#)

**Z39.50 Attributes for oclc** [New](#) [Delete Selected](#) [Clone Attributes From Source](#)

[Return to Sources](#)

Credentials for APEX Username  Password

[Apply Credentials](#) [Clear Stored Credentials](#)

[Filter](#)

✓	#	Z39.50 Source	Name	Label	Code	Format	Truncation
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	oclc	title	Title	4	6	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	oclc	isbn	ISBN	7	6	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	oclc	issn	ISSN	8	1	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	oclc	lccn	LCCN	9	1	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	oclc	tcn	Title Control Number	12	1	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	oclc	pubdate	Publication Date	31	1	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	oclc	item_type	Item Type	1001	1	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	oclc	author	Author	1003	6	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	oclc	publisher	Publisher	1018	6	0

# Chapter 28. Administering shelving locations

## Creating new shelving locations

1. Click Administration.
2. Click Local Administration.
3. Click Shelving Locations Editor.
4. Type the name of the shelving location.
5. In OPAC Visible, choose whether you would like items in this shelving location to appear in the catalog.
6. In Hold Verify,
7. In Checkin Alert, choose whether you would like a routing alert to appear when an item in this location is checked in. This is intended for special locations, such as Display, that may require special handling, or that temporarily contain items that are not normally in that location.



By default, these alerts will only display when an item is checked in, not when it is used to record an in-house use.

To also display these alerts when an item in your location is scanned for in-house use, go to Administration > Local Administration > Library Settings Editor and set Display shelving location check in alert for in-house-use to True.

8. If you would like a prefix or suffix to be added to the call numbers of every volume in this location, enter it.
9. If you would like, add a URL to the URL field. When a URL is entered in this field, the associated shelving location will display as a link in the Public Catalog summary display. This link can be useful for retrieving maps or other directions to the shelving location to aid users in finding material.
10. If you would like to override any item-level circulation/hold policies to make sure that items in your new location can't circulate or be holdable, choose No in the appropriate field. If you choose Yes, Evergreen will use the typical circulation and hold policies to determine circulation abilities.

## Deleting shelving locations

You may only delete a shelving location if: . it doesn't contain any items, or . it only contains deleted items.

Evergreen preserves shelving locations in the database, so no statistical information is lost when a shelving location is deleted.

# Modifying shelving location order

1. Go to Administration.
2. Go to Local Administration.
3. Click Shelving Location Order.
4. Drag and drop the locations until you are satisfied with their order.
5. Click Apply changes.

## Shelving location groups

### Use case

Mayberry Public Library provides a scope allowing users to search for all children's materials in their library. The library's children's scope incorporates several shelving locations used at the library, including Picture Books, Children's Fiction, Children's Non-Fiction, Easy Readers, and Children's DVDs. The library also builds a similar scope for YA materials that incorporates several shelving locations.

This feature allows staff to create and name sets of shelving locations to use as a search filter in the catalog. OPAC-visible groups will display within the library selector in the Public Catalog. When a user selects a group and performs a search, the set of results will be limited to records that have items in one of the shelving locations within the group. Groups can live at any level of the library hierarchy and may include shelving locations from any parent org unit or child org unit.



To work with Shelving Location Groups, you will need the `ADMIN_COPY_LOCATION_GROUP` permission.

## Create a Shelving Location Group

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Shelving Location Groups.
2. At the top of the screen is a drop down menu that displays the org unit tree. Select the unit within the org tree to which you want to add a shelving location group. The shelving locations associated with the org unit appear in the Shelving Locations column.
3. In the column called Location Groups, click New.
4. Choose how you want the shelving location group to display to patrons in the catalog's org unit tree in the OPAC. By default, when you add a new shelving location group, the group displays in the org unit tree beneath any branches or sub-libraries of its parental org unit. If you check the box adjacent to Display above orgs, then the group will appear above the branches or sub-libraries of its parental org unit.

5. To make the shelving location group visible to users searching the public catalog, check the box adjacent to Is OPAC visible?
6. Enter a Name for the shelving location group.
7. Click Save. The name of the Shelving Location Group appears in the Location Groups.
8. Select the shelving locations that you want to add to the group, and click Add. The shelving locations will populate the middle column, Group Entries.
9. The shelving location group is now visible in the org unit tree in the catalog. Search the catalog to retrieve results from any of the shelving locations that you added to the shelving location group.

## Order Shelving Location Groups

If you create more than one shelving location group, then you can order the groups in the org unit tree.

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Shelving Location Groups.
2. Three icons appear next to each location group. Click on the icons to drag the shelving location groups into the order in which you would like them to appear in the catalog.
3. Search the catalog to view the reorder of the shelving location groups.

# Chapter 29. Importing materials in the staff client

Evergreen exists to connect users to the materials represented by bibliographic records, call numbers, and copies — so getting these materials into your Evergreen system is vital to a successful system. There are two primary means of getting materials into Evergreen:

- The Evergreen staff client offers the MARC Batch Importer, which is a flexible interface primarily used for small batches of records;
- Alternately, import scripts can load data directly into the database, which is a highly flexible but much more complex method of loading materials suitable for large batches of records such as the initial migration from your legacy library system.

## Staff client batch record imports

The staff client has a utility for importing batches of bibliographic and item records available through Cataloging > MARC Batch Import/Export. In addition to importing new records, this interface can be used to match incoming records to existing records in the database, add or overlay MARC fields in the existing record, and add copies to those records.

The MARC Batch Import interface may also be colloquially referred to as "Vandelay" in the Evergreen community, referring to this interface's internals in the system. You will also see this name used in several places in the editor. For instance, when you click on the Record Match Sets, the title on the screen will be Vandelay Match Sets.

## When to use the MARC Batch Importer

- When importing in batches of up to 500 to 1,000 records.
- When you need the system to match those incoming records to existing records and overlay or add fields to the existing record.
- When you need to add items to existing records in the system.



If you are importing items that do not have barcodes or call numbers, you must enable the Vandelay Generate Default Barcodes and Vandelay Default Barcode Prefix (vandelay.item.barcode.prefix) settings.

## Record Match Sets

Click the Record Match Sets button to identify how Evergreen should match incoming records to existing records in the system.



These record match sets can be used when importing records through the MARC Batch Importer or when importing order records through the Acquisitions Load MARC Order Records interface.

Common match points used when creating a match set include:

- MARC tag 020a (ISBN)
- MARC tag 022a (ISSN)
- MARC tag 024a (UPC)
- MARC tag 028a (Publisher number)

## Create Match Sets

1. On the Record Match Sets screen, click New Match Set to create a set of record match points. Give the set a Name. Assign the Owning Library from the dropdown list. The Match Set Type should remain as biblio. Click Save.
2. If you don't see your new set in the list, in the upper left corner of the staff client window, click the Reload button.
3. If you had to reload, click the Record Match Sets button to get back to that screen. Find your new set in the list and click its name. (The name will appear to be a hyperlink.) This will bring you to the Vandelay Match Set Editor.
4. Create an expression that will define the match points for the incoming record. You can choose from two areas to create a match: Record Attribute (MARC fixed fields) or MARC Tag and Subfield. You can use the Boolean operators AND and OR to combine these elements to create a match set.
5. When adding a Record Attribute or MARC tag/subfield, you also can enter a Match Score. The Match Score indicates the relative importance of that match point as Evergreen evaluates an incoming record against an existing record. You can enter any integer into this field. The number that you enter is only important as it relates to other match points.

Recommended practice is that you create a match score of one (1) for the least important match point and assign increasing match points to the power of 2 to working points in increasing importance. . After creating a match point, drag the completed match point under the folder with the appropriately-named Boolean folder under the Expression tree.

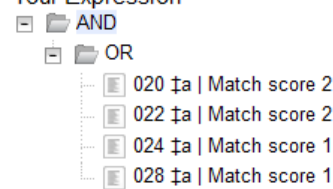
Your Expression: `((020 $a OR 022 $a OR 024 $a OR 028 $a))`

Add new

Working Match Point

Choose from among the three buttons above to add a new match point.

Your Expression



6. Click Save Changes to Expression.

## Quality Metrics

- Quality metrics provide a mechanism for Evergreen to measure the quality of records and to make importing decisions based on quality.
- Metrics are configured in the match set editor.
- Quality metrics are not required when creating a match set.
- You can use a value in a record attribute (MARC fixed fields) or a MARC tag as your quality metric.
- The encoding level record attribute can be one indicator of record quality.

Quality	Record Attribute	Tag	Subfield	Value
1	enc_level			E
2	enc_level			J
3	enc_level			3
4	enc_level			7
5	enc_level			5
6	enc_level			M
7	enc_level			2
8	enc_level			K
9	enc_level			8
10	enc_level			L
11	enc_level			I
12	enc_level			4
13	enc_level			1
14	enc_level			

## Import Item Attributes

If you are importing items with your records, you will need to map the data in your holdings tag to fields in the item record. Click the Holdings Import Profile button to map this information.

1. Click the New Definition button to create a new mapping for the holdings tag.
2. Add a Name for the definition.
3. Use the Tag field to identify the MARC tag that contains your holdings information.
4. Add the subfields that contain specific item information to the appropriate item field.
5. At a minimum, you should add the subfields that identify the Circulating Library, the Owning Library, the Call Number and the Barcode.
6. For more details, see the full list of import fields.



All fields (except for Name and Tag) can contain a MARC subfield code (such as "a") or an XPATH query. You can also use the [related library settings](#) to set defaults for some of these fields.

[Export Records](#) [Import Records](#) [Inspect Queue](#)

## Holdings Import Profiles

Context Org Unit

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

Alert Message	<input type="text"/>
Barcode	<input type="text" value="p"/>
Call Number	<input type="text" value="j"/>
Circulate	<input type="text" value="[@code = 'x' and text() = 'circulate']"/>
Circulate As MARC Type	<input type="text"/>
Circulating Library	<input type="text" value="[@code = 'b'][2]"/>
Circulation Modifier	<input type="text" value="g"/>
Copy Number	<input type="text" value="t"/>
Definition ID	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Deposit	<input type="text"/>

## Overlay/Merge Profiles

If Evergreen finds a match for an incoming record in the database, you need to identify which fields should be replaced, which should be preserved, and which should be added to the record. Click the Merge/Overlay Profiles button to create a profile that contains this information.

These overlay/merge profiles can be used when importing records through the MARC Batch Importer or when importing order records through the Acquisitions Load MARC Order Records interface.

Evergreen comes pre-installed with two default profiles:

- Default merge - No fields from incoming record are added to match. This profile is useful for item loads or for order record uploads.
- Default overlay - Incoming record will replace existing record.

You can customize the overlay/merge behavior with a new profile by clicking the New Merge Profile button. Available options for handling the fields include:

- Preserve specification - fields in the existing record that should be preserved.

- Replace specification - fields in existing record that should be replaced by those in the incoming record.
- Add specification - fields from incoming record that should be added to existing record (in addition to any already there.)
- Remove specification - fields that should be removed from incoming record.

You can add multiple tags to these specifications, separating each tag with a comma.

## Importing the records

After making the above configurations, you are now ready to import your records.

1. Click the Import Records button
2. Provide a unique name for the queue where the records will be loaded
3. Identify the match set that should be used for matching
4. If you are importing items, identify the Import Item Attributes definition in the Holdings Import Profile
5. Select a record source
6. Select the overlay/merge profile that defines which fields should be replaced, added or preserved
7. Identify which records should be imported, the options are:
  - Import Non-Matching Records will automatically import records that have no match in the system
  - Merge on Exact Match will automatically import records that match on the 901c (record ID)
  - Merge on Single Match will automatically import records when there is only one match in the system
  - Merge on Best Match will automatically import records for the best match in the system; the best match will be determined by the combined total of the records match point scores

You do not need to select any of these import options at this step. You may also opt to review the records first in the import queue and then import them.

- Best Single Match Minimum Quality Ratio should only be changed if quality metrics were used in the match set
  - Set to 0.0 to import a record regardless of record quality
  - Set to 1.0 if the incoming record must be of equal or higher quality than the existing record to be imported
  - Set to 1.1 if the incoming record must be of higher quality than the existing record to be imported

- Insufficient Quality Fall-Through Profile can also be used with quality metrics. If an incoming record does not meet the standards of the minimum quality ratio, you can identify a back-up merge profile to be used for those records. For example, you may want to use the default overlay profile for high-quality records but use the default merge profile for lower quality records.

# **Part IX. Circulation administration**

# Table of Contents

30. Circulation policies .....	162
Borrowing items: who, what, for how long .....	162
Data elements that affect your circulation policies .....	162
Circulation Rules .....	163
Creating Circulation Policies .....	167
Autorenewals in Evergreen .....	170
Circulation Limit Sets .....	171
Hold-driven recalls .....	173
Enabling hold-driven recalls .....	173
Editing the item recall notification email template .....	174
31. Item Status .....	175
Adding Item Statuses .....	176
Deleting Item Statuses .....	177
Editing Item Statuses .....	177
32. Circulating uncataloged materials .....	178
Introduction .....	178
Pre-cataloged item settings .....	178
Non-cataloged item settings .....	178
Adding a new non-cataloged type .....	179
Deleting a non-cataloged type .....	179
33. Patron registration administration .....	180
Email addresses .....	180
Parent/guardian field .....	180
Privacy waiver .....	180
34. Patron self-registration administration .....	181
Library Settings .....	181
35. Holds, transits, and resource sharing .....	183
Age hold protection .....	183
Active date display in OPAC .....	183
Best-Hold Selection Sort Order .....	183
Preconfigured Best-Hold Orders .....	184
Create a New Best-Hold Selection Sort Order .....	184
Edit an Existing Best-Hold Selection Sort Order .....	185
Choosing the Best-Hold Selection Sort Order .....	185
Permissions to use this Feature .....	185
Org Unit Proximity Adjustments .....	186
Org Unit Proximity Adjustments .....	186
Absolute and Relative Adjustments .....	187
Create an Org Unit Proximity Adjustment .....	187
Permissions to use this Feature .....	188
Floating Groups .....	188
Floating Groups .....	188
Examples .....	189
36. Working with money .....	192
Accepting credit card payments .....	192
Cash Reports .....	192
Setting limits on allowed payment amounts .....	193
37. User buckets .....	194
Introduction .....	194
Editing users .....	194
Deleting users .....	195

Editing Statistical Category Entries .....	195
38. Circulation timesavers and workflows .....	196
Barcode Completion .....	196
Scoping and Permissions .....	196
Access Points .....	196
Multiple Matches .....	198
Barcode Completion Data Fields .....	199
Create, Update, Filter, Delete/Disable Rules .....	200
Examples .....	201
Testing .....	203
Address Alert .....	203
General Usage Examples .....	204
Access Control and Scoping .....	204
Adding a new Address Alert .....	204
Editing an Address Alert .....	205
Deleting an Address Alert .....	205
Staff View of Address Alerts .....	205
Regular Expressions / Wildcards .....	206
Examples .....	206
Development .....	207
39. Library closures .....	208
Setting regular library hours .....	208
Set closed dates using the Closed Dates Editor .....	208
Adding a closure .....	208
Detailed closure .....	209
40. Emergency Closing Handler .....	210
Introduction .....	210
Administration .....	210
Permissions .....	210
Create an emergency closing .....	210
Emergency Closing Handler .....	211
Editing Closing to process Emergency Closing .....	211
Hard due dates .....	212
Creating a hard due date .....	212
41. Booking Module Administration .....	214
Creating Bookable Non-Bibliographic Resources .....	214
Create New Resource Type .....	214
Create New Resource Attribute .....	217
Create New Resource Attribute Value .....	218
Create New Resource .....	219
Map Resource Attributes and Values to Resources .....	220
Editing Non-Bibliographic Resources .....	221
Editing Resource Types .....	221
Deleting Non-bibliographic Resources .....	222
42. Print (Receipt) Templates .....	223
Receipt Templates .....	223
Editing Receipts .....	224
Formatting Receipts .....	225
Text Formatting .....	225
Date Formatting .....	225
Currency Formatting .....	225
Conditional Formatting .....	226
Substrings .....	226
Images .....	226



Sort Order .....	226
Subtotals .....	227
Exporting and importing Customized Receipts .....	227
Exporting templates .....	227
Importing Templates .....	227
43. Self checkout .....	229
Introduction .....	229
Initializing the self check .....	229
Setting library hours of operation .....	229
Configuring self check behavior .....	229
Using the self check .....	230

# Chapter 30. Circulation policies

This section discusses the initial setup and subsequent troubleshooting and refinement of circulation policies.

## Borrowing items: who, what, for how long

Circulation policies pull together user, library, and item data to determine how library materials circulate, such as: which patrons, from what libraries can borrow what types of materials, for how long, and with what overdue fines.

Individual elements of the circulation policies are configured using specific interfaces, and should be configured prior to setting up the circulation policies.

## Data elements that affect your circulation policies

There are a few data elements which must be considered when setting up your circulation policies.

### Copy data

Several fields set via the holdings editor are commonly used to affect the circulation of an item.

- Circulation modifier - Circulation modifiers are fields used to control circulation policies on specific groups of items. They can be added to items during the cataloging process. New circulation modifiers can be created in the staff client by navigating to Administration → Server Administration → Circulation Modifiers.
- Circulate? flag - The circulate? flag in the holdings editor can be set to False to disallow an item from circulating.
- Reference? flag - The reference? flag in the holdings editor can also be used as a data element in circulation policies.

### Shelving location data

- To get to the Shelving Locations Editor, navigate to Administration → Local Administration → Shelving Locations Editor.
- Set OPAC Visible to "No" to hide all items in a shelving location from the public catalog. (You can also hide individual items using the Copy Editor.)
- Set Hold Verify to "Yes" if when an item checks in you want to always ask for staff confirmation before capturing a hold.
- Set Checkin Alert to "Yes" to allow routing alerts to display when items are checked in.
- Set Holdable to "No" to prevent items in an entire shelving location from being placed on hold.

- Set Circulate to "No" to disallow circulating items in an entire shelving location.
- If you delete a shelving location, it will be removed from display in the staff client and the catalog, but it will remain in the database. This allows you to treat a shelving location as deleted without losing statistical information for circulations related to that shelving location.

## Copy Locations Editor

Welcome **admin**

Create a new copy location			
Name:	<input type="text"/>	Holdable:	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>
OPAC Visible:	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>	Circulate:	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>
Hold Verify:	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>	Owning Library	CONS
Checkin Alert:	Yes <input type="radio"/> No <input checked="" type="radio"/>		
Label prefix:	<input type="text"/>	Label suffix:	<input type="text"/>
<input type="button" value="Create a new copy location"/>			

Focus Location: BR1

Name:	Owning Library	Holdable	Hold Verify	OPAC Visible	Circulate	Checkin Alert	Label prefix	Label suffix	Edit	Delete
Location 1 <a href="#">Translate</a>	CONS	✓	✓	✓	✓	X			<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>
Stacks <a href="#">Translate</a>	CONS	✓	✓	✓	✓	X			<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">Delete</a>

- Shelving locations can also be used as a data element in circulation policies.

## User data

Finally, several characteristics of specific patrons can affect circulation policies. You can modify these characteristics in a patron's record (Search → Search for Patrons, select a patron, choose Edit tab) or when registering a new patron (Circulation → Register Patron).

- The user permission group is also commonly used as a data element in circulation policies.
- Other user data that can be used for circulation policies include the juvenile flag in the user record.

## Circulation Rules

Loan duration describes the length of time for a checkout. You can also identify the maximum renewals that can be placed on an item.

You can find Circulation Duration Rules by navigating to Administration → Server Administration → Circulation Duration Rules.

## Circ Duration Rules

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	#	name	max_renewals	shrt	normal	extended
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	21d_1r	1	21 days	21 days	21 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	21d_0r	0	21 days	21 days	21 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	14d_1r	1	14 days	14 days	14 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	3d_0r	0	3 days	3 days	3 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	7d_0r	0	7 days	7 days	7 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	1d_0r	0	1 day	1 day	1 day
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	2d_0r	0	2 days	2 days	2 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	35d_1r	1	35 days	35 days	35 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	21d_3r	3	21 days	21 days	21 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	7d_1r	1	7 days	7 days	7 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	2d_1r	1	2 days	2 days	2 days
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	14d_2r	2	14 days	14 days	14 days

Recurring fine describes the amount assessed for daily and hourly fines as well as fines set for other regular intervals. You can also identify any grace periods that should be applied before the fine starts accruing.

You can find Recurring Fine Rules by navigating to Administration → Server Administration → Circulation Recurring Fine Rules.

## Recurring Fine Rules

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	#	name	recurrence_int	low	normal	high	grace_period
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	10c_pd	1 day	0.10	0.10	0.10	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	2d_pd	1 day	2.00	2.00	2.00	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	1d_pd	1 day	1.00	1.00	1.00	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	10d_pd	1 day	10.00	10.00	10.00	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	50c_pd	1 day	0.50	0.50	0.50	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	0c_pd	1 day	0.00	0.00	0.00	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	5c_pd	1 day	0.05	0.05	0.05	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	5d_pd	1 day	5.00	5.00	5.00	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	25c_pd	1 day	0.25	0.25	0.25	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	25d_pd	1 day	25.00	25.00	25.00	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	15c_pd	1 day	0.15	0.15	0.15	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	20c_pd	1 day	0.20	0.20	0.20	00:00:00
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	3d_pd	1 day	3.00	3.00	3.00	00:00:00

Max fine describes the maximum amount of fines that will be assessed for a specific circulation. Set the Is Percent field to True if the maximum fine should be a percentage of the item's price.

You can find Circ Max Fine Rules by navigating to Administration → Server Administration → Circulation Max Fine Rules.

## Circ Max Fine Rules

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	#	Rule Name	Max Fine Amount	Is Percent
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	10d_max_fine	10.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	40d_max_fine	40.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	5d_max_fine	5.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	999d_max_fine	999.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	0d_max_fine	0.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	2d_max_fine	2.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	25d_max_fine	25.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	100d_max_fine	100.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	30d_max_fine	30.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	6d_max_fine	6.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	22d_max_fine	22.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	12	150d_max_fine	150.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	13	20d_max_fine	20.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	14	15d_max_fine	15.00	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	15	50d_max_fine	50.00	False

These rules generally cause the most variation between organizational units.

Loan duration and recurring fine rate are designed with 3 levels: short, normal, and extended loan duration, and low, normal, and high recurring fine rate. These values are applied to specific items, when item records are created.

When naming these rules, give them a name that clearly identifies what the rule does. This will make it easier to select the correct rule when creating your circ policies.

## Circulation Limit Sets

Circulation Limit Sets allow you to limit the maximum number of items for different types of materials that a patron can check out at one time. Evergreen supports creating these limits based on circulation modifiers, shelving locations, or circulation limit groups, which allow you to create limits based on MARC data. The below instructions will allow you to create limits based on circulation modifiers.

- Configure the circulation limit sets by selecting Administration → Local Administration → Circulation Limit Sets.
- Items Out - The maximum number of items circulated to a patron at the same time.

- **Min Depth** - Enter the minimum depth in the org tree that Evergreen will consider as valid circulation libraries for counting items out. The min depth is based on org unit type depths. For example, if you want the items in all of the circulating libraries in your consortium to be eligible for restriction by this limit set when it is applied to a circulation policy, then enter a zero (0) in this field.
- **Global** - Check the box adjacent to Global if you want all of the org units in your consortium to be restricted by this limit set when it is applied to a circulation policy. Otherwise, Evergreen will only apply the limit to the direct ancestors and descendants of the owning library.
- **Linked Limit Groups** - Add any circulation modifiers, shelving locations, or circ limit groups that should be part of this limit set.

Example Your library (BR1) allows patrons to check out up to 5 videos at one time. This checkout limit should apply when your library's videos are checked out at any library in the consortium. Items with DVD, BLURAY, and VHS circ modifiers should be included in this maximum checkout count.

To create this limit set, you would add 5 to the Items Out field, 0 to the Min Depth field and select the Global flag. Add the DVD, BLURAY and VHS circ modifiers to the limit set.

## Creating Circulation Policies

Once you have identified your data elements that will drive circulation policies and have created your circulation rules, you are ready to begin creating your circulation policies.

If you are managing a small number of rules, you can create and manage circulation policies in the staff client via Administration → Local Administration → Circulation Policies. However, if you are managing a large number of policies, it is easier to create and locate rules directly in the database by updating `config.circ_matrix_matchpoint`.

The `config.circ_matrix_matchpoint` table is central to the configuration of circulation parameters. It collects the main set of data used to determine what rules apply to any given circulation. It is useful for us to think of their columns in terms of match columns, those that are used to match the particulars of a given circulation transaction, and result columns, those that return the various parameters that are applied to the matching transaction.

- Circulation policies by checkout library or owning library?
  - If your policies should follow the rules of the library that checks out the item, select the checkout library as the Org Unit (`org_unit`).
  - If your policies should follow the rules of the library that owns the item, select the consortium as the Org Unit (`org_unit`) and select the owning library as the Item Circ Lib (`copy_circ_lib`).
- Renewal policies can be created by setting Renewals? (`is_renewal`) to True.
- You can apply the duration rules, recurring fine rules, maximum fine rules, and circulation sets created in the above sets when creating the circulation policy.

## Best practices for creating policies

- Start by replacing the default consortium-level circ policy with one that contains a majority of your libraries' duration, recurring fine, and max fine rules. This first rule will serve as a default for all materials and permission groups.
- If many libraries in your consortium have rules that differ from the default for particular materials or people, set a consortium-wide policy for that circ modifier or that permission group.
- After setting these consortium defaults, if a library has a circulation rule that differs from the default, you can then create a rule for that library. You only need to change the parameters that are different from the default parameters. The rule will inherit the values for the other parameters from that default consortium rule.
- Try to avoid unnecessary repetition.
- Try to get as much agreement as possible among the libraries in your consortium.

### Example 1

org_unit	duration_rule	recurring_fine_rule	max_fine_rule
CONS	21_day_2_renew	NONE	NONE
SYS1	NULL	25_cents	3_dollars

In this example, the consortium has decided on a 21\_day\_2\_renew loan rule for general materials, i.e. books, etc. Most members do not charge overdue fines. System 1 charges 25 cents per day to a maximum of \$3.00, but otherwise uses the default circulation duration.

### Example 2

org_unit	grp	circ_modifier	circulate	duration_rule	recurring_fine_rule	max_fine_rule
CONS	Users	book	TRUE	21_day_2_renew	5_cents	2_dollars
CONS	Users	dvd	FALSE	14_day_1_renew	25_cents	5_dollars
CONS	Users	music	TRUE	14_day_2_renew	10_cents	3_dollars

This example includes a basic set of fields and creates a situation where items with a circ modifier of "book" or "music" can be checked out, but "dvd" items will not circulate. The associated rules would apply during checkouts.



### Example 3

org_unit	grp	circ_modifier	circulate	duration_rule	recurring_fine_rule	max_fine_rule
CONS	Users	book	TRUE	21_day_2_renew	5_cents	2_dollars
CONS	Users	dvd	FALSE	14_day_1_renew	25_cents	5_dollars
SYS1	Adult	dvd	TRUE	14_day_1_renew	25_cents	5_dollars
CONS	Users	music	TRUE	14_day_2_renew	10_cents	3_dollars
SYS2	Users	music	FALSE	14_day_2_renew	10_cents	3_dollars
BR3	Users	music	TRUE	14_day_2_renew	10_cents	3_dollars

This example builds on the earlier example and adds some more complicated options.

It is still true that "book" and "music" items can be checked out, while "dvd" is not circulated. However, now we have added new rules that state that "Adult" patrons of "SYS1" can circulate "dvd" items.

## Settings Relevant to Circulation

The following circulation settings, available via Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor, can also affect your circulation duration, renewals and fine policy.

- Auto-Extend Grace Periods - When enabled, grace periods will auto-extend. By default this will be only when they are a full day or more and end on a closed date, though other options can alter this.
- Auto-Extending Grace Periods extend for all closed dates - If enabled and Grace Periods auto-extending is turned on, grace periods will extend past all closed dates they intersect, within hard-coded limits.
- Auto-Extending Grace Periods include trailing closed dates - If enabled and Grace Periods auto-extending is turned on, grace periods will include closed dates that directly follow the last day of the grace period.
- Checkout auto renew age - When an item has been checked out for at least this amount of time, an attempt to check out the item to the patron that it is already checked out to will simply renew the circulation.
- Cap Max Fine at Item Price - This prevents the system from charging more than the item price in overdue fines.

- **Lost Item Billing: New Min/Max Price Settings** - Patrons will be billed at least the Min Price and at most the Max price, even if the item's price is outside that range. To set a fixed price for all lost items, set min and max to the same amount.
- **Charge fines on overdue circulations when closed** - Normally, fines are not charged when a library is closed. When set to True, fines will be charged during scheduled closings and normal weekly closed days.

## Autorenewals in Evergreen

### Introduction

Circulation policies in Evergreen can now be configured to automatically renew items checked out on patron accounts. Circulations will be renewed automatically and patrons will not need to log in to their OPAC accounts or ask library staff to renew materials.

Autorenewals are set in the Circulation Duration Rules, which allows this feature to be applied to selected circulation policies. Effectively, this makes autorenewals configurable by patron group, organizational unit or library, and circulation modifier.

### Configure Autorenewals

Autorenewals are configured in Administration → Server Administration → Circulation Duration Rules.

Enter the number of automatic renewals allowed in the new field called `max_auto_renewals`. The field called `max_renewals` will still set the maximum number of manual renewals, whether staff or patron initiated. Typically, the `max_renewals` value will be greater than `max_auto_renewals`, so that even if no more autorenewals are allowed, a patron may still renew via the OPAC.

The Circulation Duration Rule can then be applied to specific circulation policies (Administration → Local Administration → Circulation Policies) to implement autorenewals in Evergreen.

### Autorenewal Notices and Action Triggers

Two new action triggers have been added to Evergreen for use with autorenewals. They can be found and configured in Administration → Local Administration → Notifications/Action Triggers.

- **Autorenew**
  - Uses the `checkout.due` hook to automatically renew circulations before they are due.
  - Autorenewals will not occur if the item has holds, exceeds the maximum number of autorenewals allowed, or if the patron has been blocked from renewing items.
- **AutorenewNotify**
  - Email notification to inform patrons when their materials are automatically renewed or, if they are not automatically renewed due to meeting one of the criteria listed above.

- This notice can also be configured as an SMS notification.
- This notice does not change or interact with the Courtesy Notice (Pre-due Notice) that is also available in Evergreen. Libraries should evaluate whether they want to use both Courtesy Notices and Autorenewal notices.

Sample of successful autorenewal notification:

Sample of blocked autorenewal notification:

## Autorenewals in Patron Accounts

A new column called `AutoRenewalsRemaining` indicates how many autorenewals are available for a transaction.

## Circulation Limit Sets

### Maximum Checkout by Shelving Location

This feature enables you to specify the maximum number of checkouts of items by shelving location and is an addition to the circulation limit sets. Circulation limit sets refine circulation policies by limiting the number of items that users can check out. Circulation limit sets are linked by name to circulation policies.

To limit checkouts by shelving location:

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Circulation Limit Sets.
2. Click New to create a new circulation limit set.
3. In the Owning Library field, select the library that can create and edit this limit set.
4. Enter a Name for the circulation set. You will select the Name to link the circulation limit set to a circulation policy.
5. Enter the number of Items Out that a user can take from this shelving location.
6. Enter the Min Depth, or the minimum depth in the org tree that Evergreen will consider as valid circulation libraries for counting items out. The min depth is based on org unit type depths. For example, if you want the items in all of the circulating libraries in your consortium to be eligible for restriction by this limit set when it is applied to a circulation policy, then enter a zero (0) in this field.

7. Check the box adjacent to Global Flag if you want all of the org units in your consortium to be restricted by this limit set when it is applied to a circulation policy. Otherwise, Evergreen will only apply the limit to the direct ancestors and descendants of the owning library.
8. Enter a brief Description of the circulation limit set.
9. Click Save.

Owning Library	AP	▼
Name	A/V Materials	
Items Out	5	
Min Depth	0	
Global	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Description	Videos, DVDs, and CDs	

**Linked Circ Modifiers**

Name	Remove
<input type="text"/> ▼	<a href="#">Add</a>

**Linked Copy Locations**

Name	Remove
A/V Materials ▼	<a href="#">Add</a>

**Linked Limit Groups**

Name	Check Only?	Remove
<input type="text"/> ▼		<a href="#">Add</a>

To link the circulation limit set to a circulation policy:

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Circulation Policies
2. Select an existing circulation policy, or create a new one.
3. Scroll down to the Linked Limit Sets.
4. Select the Name of the limit set that you want to add to the circulation policy.
5. Click Add.
6. Click Save.

Circulate?	True	▼
Duration Rule	default	▼
Renewals Override		
Hard Due Date		▼
Recurring Fine Rule	default	▼
Grace Period Override		
Max Fine Rule	default	▼
Minimum Available Copy/Hold Ratio		
Minimum Total Copy/Hold Ratio		
Script Test		

**Linked Limit Sets**

Name	Fallthrough	Active	Remove
A/V Materials			<a href="#">Add</a>

Cancel

Save

## Hold-driven recalls

In academic libraries, it is common for groups like faculty and graduate students to have extended loan periods (for example, 120 days), while others have more common loan periods such as 3 weeks. In these environments, it is desirable to have a hold placed on an item that has been loaned out for an extended period to trigger a recall, which:

1. Truncates the loan period
2. Sets the remaining available renewals to 0
3. Optionally: Changes the fines associated with overdues for the new due date
4. Optionally: Notifies the current patron of the recall, including the new due date and fine level

## Enabling hold-driven recalls

By default, holds do not trigger recalls. To enable hold-driven recalls of circulating items, library settings must be changed as follows:

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.

2. Set the Recalls: Circulation duration that triggers a recall (recall threshold) setting. The recall threshold is specified as an interval (for example, "21 days"); any items with a loan duration of less than this interval are not considered for a recall.
3. Set the Recalls: Truncated loan period (return interval) setting. The return interval is specified as an interval (for example, "7 days"). The due date on the recalled item is changed to be the greater of either the recall threshold or the return interval.
4. Optionally: Set the Recalls: An array of fine amount, fine interval, and maximum fine setting. If set, this applies the specified fine rules to the current circulation period for the recalled item.

When a hold is placed and no available items are found by the hold targeter, the recall logic checks to see if the recall threshold and return interval settings are set; if so, then the hold targeter checks the currently checked-out items to determine if any of the currently circulating items at the designated pickup library have a loan duration longer than the recall threshold. If so, then the eligible item with the due date nearest to the current date is recalled.

## Editing the item recall notification email template

The template for the item recall notification email is contained in the Item Recall Email Notice template, found under Administration → Local Administration → Notifications / Action Triggers.

# Chapter 31. Item Status

To navigate to the item status editor from the staff client menu, select Administration → Server Administration → Item Statuses.

The Item Status Editor is used to add, edit and delete statuses of items in your system.

For each status, you can set the following properties:

- **Holdable** - If checked, users can place holds on items in this status, provided there are no other flags or rules preventing holds. If unchecked, users cannot place holds on items in this status.
- **OPAC Visible** - If checked, items in this status will be visible in the public catalog. If unchecked, items in this status will not be visible in the public catalog, but they will be visible when using the catalog in the staff client.
- **Sets item active** - If checked, moving an item that does not yet have an active date to this status will set the active date. If the item already has an active date, then no changes will be made to the active date. If unchecked, this status will never set the item's active date.
- **Is Available** - If checked, items with this status will appear in catalog searches where "limit to available" is selected as a search filter. Also, items with this status will check out without status warnings. By default, the "Available" and "Reshelving" statuses have the "Is Available" flag set. The flag may be applied to local/custom statuses via the item status admin interface.

Evergreen comes pre-loaded with a number of item statuses.

Table 31.1. Stock item statuses and default settings

ID	Name	Holdable	OPAC Visible	Sets copy active
0	Available	true	true	true
1	Checked out	true	true	true
2	Bindery	false	false	false
3	Lost	false	false	false
4	Missing	false	false	false
5	In process	true	true	false
6	In transit	true	true	false
7	Reshelving	true	true	true
8	On holds shelf	true	true	true
9	On order	true	true	false
10	ILL	false	false	true
11	Cataloging	false	false	false
12	Reserves	false	true	true

ID	Name	Holdable	OPAC Visible	Sets copy active
13	Discard/Weed	false	false	false
14	Damaged	false	false	false
15	On reservation shelf	false	false	true
16	Long Overdue	false	false	false
17	Lost and Paid	false	false	false

## Adding Item Statuses

1. In the New Status field, enter the name of the new status you wish to add.
2. Click Add.
3. Locate your new status and check the Holdable check box if you wish to allow users to place holds on items in this status. Check OPAC Visible if you wish for this status to appear in the public catalog. Check Sets copy active if you wish for this status to set the active date for new items.
4. Click Save Changes at the bottom of the screen to save changes to the new status.

Open in New Window

New Status:

ID	Name	Translation	Holdable	OPAC Visible	Sets copy active	Is Available
0	Available	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1	Checked out	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	ILL	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
101	test status	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Cataloging	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	Reserves	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Discard/Weed	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Damaged	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	On reservation shelf	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	Long Overdue	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
17	Lost and Paid	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	Canceled Transit	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	Bindery	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	Lost	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



# Deleting Item Statuses

1. Highlight the statuses you wish to delete. Ctrl-click to select more than one status.
2. Click Delete Selected.
3. Click OK to verify.

Open in New Window

New Status:  Add

ID	Name	Translation	Holdable	OPAC Visible	Sets copy active	Is Available
2	Bindery	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
18	Canceled Transit	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	Cataloging	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Checked out	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	Damaged	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	Discard/Weed	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	ILL	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	In process	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Save Changes Delete Selected



You will not be able to delete statuses if items currently exist with that status.

# Editing Item Statuses

1. Double click on a status name to change its name. Enter the new name.
2. To change whether a status is holdable, visible in the OPAC, or sets the item's active date, check or uncheck the relevant checkbox.
3. Once you have finished editing the statuses, remember to click Save Changes.

New Status:  Add

ID	Name	Translation	Holdable	OPAC Visible	Sets copy active	Is Available
0	Available	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1	Checked out	Translate ▼	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	ILL	Translate ▼	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

# Chapter 32. Circulating uncataloged materials

## Introduction

This section discusses settings for circulating items that are not cataloged. Evergreen offers two ways to circulate an item that is not in the catalog:

- Pre-cataloged items (also known as on-the-fly items) have a barcode, as well as some basic metadata which staff members enter at the time of checkout. These are represented in Evergreen with an item record which has to be manually deleted or transferred when it is no longer needed.
- Non-cataloged items (also known as ephemeral items) do not have barcodes, have no metadata, and are not represented with an item record. No fines accrue on these materials, but Evergreen does collect statistics on these circulations.

## Pre-cataloged item settings

By default, when a pre-cataloged item is created, Evergreen sets the Circ Library field to the library where it was checked out. You may change this so that the circ library is set to a different library. This can be helpful in cases where the cataloger who fixes pre-cataloged items is at another library, and you'd like all pre-cataloged items to be routed to that cataloger's library when they are returned.

To change this setting:

1. Go to Administration > Local Administration > Library Settings Editor.
2. Choose Pre-cat Item Circ Lib.
3. Click Edit.
4. Select the appropriate context. For example, if all pre-cataloged items in your system should have the same circ library, you should choose your system as the context.
5. Type in the shortname of the library that should be in the circ lib field. Make sure to type this correctly, or Evergreen won't be able to create pre-cataloged items.



Evergreen always sets the owning library of pre-cataloged items to be the consortium.

## Non-cataloged item settings

In Evergreen, libraries may elect to create their own local non-cataloged item types. For example, you may choose to circulate non-cataloged paperbacks or magazine back-issues, but not wish to catalog them.

## Adding a new non-cataloged type

1. Go to Administration > Local Administration > Non-Cataloged Types Editor.
2. Under Create a new non-cataloged type, start filling out the appropriate information.
3. Choose an appropriate duration. This period of time will be used to calculate a due date that is displayed to the patron on the patron's receipt and My Account view in the public catalog. The item will be automatically removed from the My Account view the day after the due date.
4. The Circulate In-House? checkbox is only for your records. This checkbox does not affect how these materials circulate.
5. Click the Create button when you are done.

**Non Cataloged Types Editor**

Create a new non-cataloged type					
<input type="text" value="Donated children's books"/>	21	<input type="button" value="Days"/> ▾	<input type="checkbox"/> Circulate In-House?	<input type="button" value="CONS"/> ▾	<input type="button" value="Create"/>

## Deleting a non-cataloged type

1. Go to Administration > Local Administration > Non-Cataloged Types Editor.
2. Click the Delete button next to the type you wish to delete. Note that if any non-cataloged items of this type have ever been entered, you will not be able to delete it.

# Chapter 33. Patron registration administration

## Email addresses

It's possible to set up the patron registration form to either allow or disallow users to enter multiple email addresses for a single patron, separated by a comma.

To do this, go to Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor. Search for the setting called **ui.patron.edit.au.email.regex**.

If you'd like to allow multiple email addresses, set this value to `^(?: (?:\b[^\s,]+@[^\s,]+\.[^\s,]+\b) (?: ,\s?(?!$)|$) )*$`

If you'd like to disallow multiple email addresses, set this value to `^(?:\b[^\s,]+@[^\s,]+\.[^\s,]+\b)$`

## Parent/guardian field

In addition to the standard "show" and "suggest" visibility settings, the guardian field has a library setting called `ui.patron.edit.guardian_required_for_juv` ("GUI: Juvenile account requires parent/guardian"). When this setting is set to true, a value will be required in the patron editor when the juvenile flag is active.

## Privacy waiver

Patrons who wish to authorize other people to use their account may now do so via the OPAC. In the Search and History Preferences tab under Account Preferences, a section labeled "Allow others to use my account" allows patrons to enter a name and indicate that the specified person is allowed to place holds, pickup holds, view borrowing history, or check out items on their account. This information is displayed to circulation staff in the patron account summary in the web client. (Staff may also add, edit, and remove entries via the patron editor.)

You can use the library setting called "Allow others to use patron account (privacy waiver)," to enable or disable this feature.

# Chapter 34. Patron self-registration administration

## Library Settings

Three Library Settings are specific to patron self-registration:

- OPAC: Allow Patron Self-Registration must be set to **True** to enable use of this feature.
- OPAC: Patron Self-Reg. Expire Interval allows each library to set the amount of time after which pending patron accounts should be deleted.
- OPAC: Patron Self-Reg. Display Timeout allows each library to set the amount of time after which the patron self-registration screen will timeout in the OPAC. The default is 5 minutes.

Several more Library Settings can be used to determine if a field should be required or hidden in the self-registration form:

- GUI: Require day\_phone field on patron registration
- GUI: Show day\_phone on patron registration
- GUI: Require dob (date of birth) field on patron registration
- GUI: Show dob field on patron registration
- GUI: Require email field on patron registration
- GUI: Show email field on patron registration
- GUI: Require State field on patron registration
- GUI: Show State field on patron registration
- GUI: Require county field on patron registration
- GUI: Show county field on patron registration [New Setting]

Several more Library Settings can be used to verify values in certain fields and provide examples for data format on the registration form:

- Global: Patron username format
- GUI: Regex for phone fields on patron registration OR GUI: Regex for day\_phone field on patron registration
- GUI: Regex for email field on patron registration
- GUI: Regex for post\_code field on patron registration

- GUI: Example for email field on patron registration
- GUI: Example for post\_code field on patron registration
- GUI: Example for day\_phone field on patron registration OR GUI: Example for phone fields on patron registration

# Chapter 35. Holds, transits, and resource sharing

## Age hold protection

Age hold protection prevents new items from filling holds requested for pickup at a library other than the owning library for a specified period of time.

You can define the protection period in Administration → Server Administration → Age Hold Protect Rules.

The protection period when applied to a item record can start with the item record create date (default) or active date. You can change this setting in Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor: Use Active Date for Age Protection.

In addition to time period, you can set the proximity value to define which organizational units are allowed to act as pickup libraries. The proximity values affect holds as follows:

- "0" allows only holds where pickup library = owning library
- "1" allows holds where pickup library = owning library, parent, and child organizational units
- "2" allows holds where pickup library = owning library, parent, child, and/or sibling organizational units

Age protection only applies to individual item records. You cannot configure age protection rules in hold policies.

## Active date display in OPAC

If a library uses the item's active date to calculate holds age protection, the active date will display with the item details instead of the create date in the staff client view of the catalog. Libraries that do not enable the Use Active Date for Age Protection library setting will continue to display the create date.

## Best-Hold Selection Sort Order

Best-Hold Selection Sort Order allows libraries to configure customized rules for Evergreen to use to select the best hold to fill at opportunistic capture. When an item is captured for a hold upon check-in, Evergreen evaluates the holds in the system that the item could fill. Evergreen uses a set of rules, or a Best-Hold Selection Sort Order, to determine the best hold to fill with the item. In previous version of Evergreen, there were two sets of rules for Evergreen to use to determine the best hold to fulfill: Traditional and FIFO (First In, First Out). Traditional uses Org Unit Proximity to identify the nearest hold to fill. FIFO follows a strict order of first-in, first-out rules. This feature allows new, custom Best-Hold Selection Sort Orders to be created. Existing Best-Hold Selection Sort Orders can also be modified.

# Preconfigured Best-Hold Orders

Evergreen comes with six preconfigured Best-Hold Selection Sort Orders to choose from:

- Traditional
- Traditional with Holds-go-home
- Traditional with Holds-always-go-home
- FIFO
- FIFO with Holds-go-home
- FIFO with Holds-always-go-home

The Holds-go-home and Holds-always-go-home options allow libraries to determine how long they want to allow items to transit outside of the item's home library, before it must return to its home library to fulfill any holds that are to be picked up there. Libraries can set this time limit in the library setting Holds: Max foreign-circulation time. The Library Settings Editor can be found under Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.

## Create a New Best-Hold Selection Sort Order

To create a new Best-Hold Selection Sort Order, go to Administration → Server Administration → Best-Hold Selection Sort Order.

1. Click Create New.
2. Assign your Best-Hold Selection Sort Order a Name.
3. Next, use the Move Up and Move Down buttons to arrange the fields in the order that you would like Evergreen to check when looking for the best hold to fill with an item at opportunistic capture.
4. Click Save Changes to create your custom Best-Hold Selection Sort Order.

Go Back

Reload

Go Forward

Best-Hold Selection Sort Order

Create New or Edit Existing

You are editing best-hold order #1: Traditional.

Name: Traditional

Order:

[pprox] Capture Lib to Pickup Lib Proximity  
[aprox] Adjusted Circ Lib to Pickup Lib Proximity  
[priority] Hold Priority  
[cut] Hold Cut-in-line State  
[depth] Hold Selection Depth  
[ptime] Hold Request Time  
[hptime] Copy Has Circulated From Home Lately  
[hprox] Circ Lib to Request Lib Proximity  
[aprox] Adjusted Capture Location to Pickup Lib Proximity  
[shptime] Copy Has Been Home At All Lately

↑ Move Up k  
↓ Move Down i

Because rtime, a high-precision timestamp, is essentially unique among holds, no fields arranged after rtime really have any effect in determining best-hold selection.

To choose which Best-Hold Selection Sort Order will be used by Evergreen at copy capture time, see the Library Settings interface.

Save Changes



# Edit an Existing Best-Hold Selection Sort Order

To edit an existing Best-Hold Selection Sort Order, go to Administration → Server Administration → Best-Hold Selection Sort Order.

1. Click Edit Existing.
2. Choose the Best-Hold Selection Sort Order that you would like to edit from the drop down menu.
3. Next, use the Move Up and Move Down buttons to arrange the fields in the new order that you would like Evergreen to check when looking for the best hold to fill with an item at opportunistic capture.
4. Click Save Changes to save your edits.

## Choosing the Best-Hold Selection Sort Order

The Best-Hold Selection Sort Order can be set for an Org Unit in the Library Settings Editor.

To select the Best-Hold Selection Sort Order that your Org Unit will use:

1. Go to Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.
2. Locate the setting Holds: Best-hold selection sort order, and click Edit.
3. Choose the Context org unit for this setting.
4. Select the Best-hold selection sort order, or Value, from the drop down menu.
5. Click Update Setting.

The screenshot shows the 'Organization Unit Settings' page with a table of settings. The 'Holds: Best-hold selection sort order' setting is highlighted. An 'Edit Setting' dialog box is open, showing the 'Context' dropdown set to 'APEX' and the 'Value' dropdown set to 'FIFO'. The 'Value' dropdown options are: Traditional, Traditional with Holds-always-go-home, Traditional with Holds-go-home, FIFO, FIFO with Holds-always-go-home, and FIFO with Holds-go-home.

Context	Value
APEX	False
CONS	True
CONS	True
CONS	6 months
CONS	25
CONS	14 days
APEX	1 day
APEX	5 days
CONS	365 days
CONS	False
APEX	False
CONS	6 months
CONS	14 days
CONS	True
APEX	True

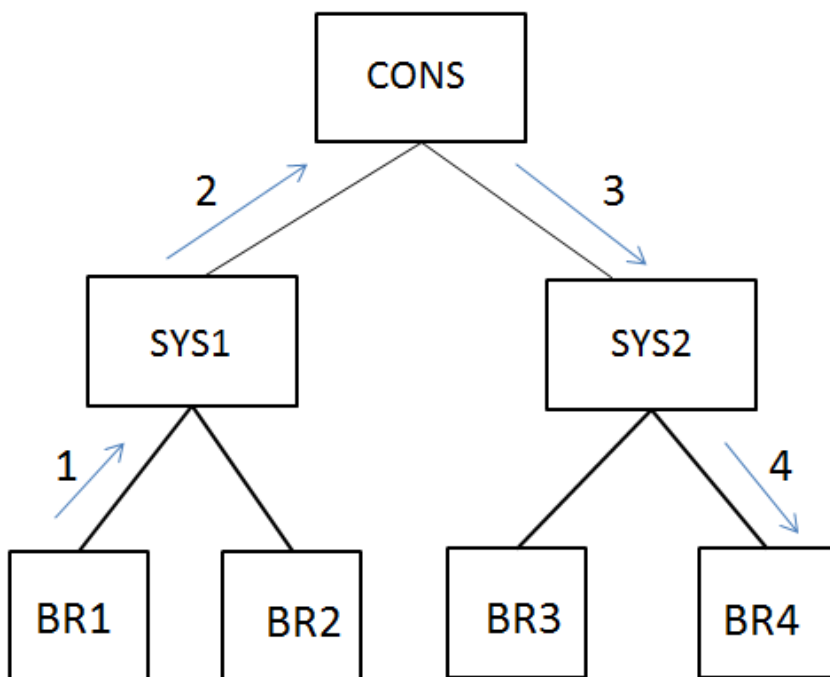
## Permissions to use this Feature

To administer the custom Best-Hold Selection Sort Order interface, you need the following permission:

# Org Unit Proximity Adjustments

## Org Unit Proximity Adjustments

Org Unit Proximity Adjustments allow libraries to indicate lending preferences for holds between libraries in an Evergreen consortium. When a hold is placed in Evergreen, the hold targeter looks for items that can fill the hold. One factor that the hold targeter uses to choose the best item to fill the hold is the distance, or proximity, between the capturing library and the pickup library for the request. The proximity is based on the number of steps through the org tree that it takes to get from one org unit to another.



Org Unit Proximity between BR1 and BR4 = 4

Org Unit Proximity Adjustments allow libraries to customize the distances between org units, which provides more control over which libraries are looked at when targeting copies to fill a hold. Evergreen can also be configured to take Org Unit Proximity Adjustments into account during opportunistic capture through the creation of a custom Best-Hold Selection Sort Order. See documentation [here](#) for more information on Best-Hold Selection Sort Order.

An Org Unit Proximity Adjustment can be created to tell Evergreen which libraries to look at first for items to fill a hold or which library to look at last. This may be useful for accounting for true

transit costs or physical distances between libraries. It can also be used to identify libraries that have special lending agreements or preferences. Org Unit Proximity Adjustments can be created for all holds between two org units, or they can be created for holds on specific Shelving Locations and Circulation Modifiers.

## Absolute and Relative Adjustments

Two types of proximity adjustments can be created in Evergreen: Absolute adjustments and Relative adjustments.

Absolute proximity adjustments allow you to replace the default proximity distance between two org units. An absolute adjustment could be made to tell the hold targeter to look at a specific library or library system first to find an item to fill a hold, before looking elsewhere in the consortium.

Relative proximity adjustments allows the proximity between org units to be treated as closer or farther from one another than the default distance. A relative proximity adjustment could be used to identify a library that has limited hours or slow transit times to tell the hold targeter to look at that library last for items to fill a hold.

## Create an Org Unit Proximity Adjustment

To create an Org Unit Proximity Adjustment between two libraries:

1. In the Administration menu choose Server Administration → Org Unit Proximity Adjustments.
2. Click New OU Proximity Adjustment.
3. Choose an Item Circ Lib from the drop down menu.
4. Choose a Hold Request Lib from the drop down menu.
5. If this proximity adjustment applies to a specific shelving location, select the appropriate Shelving Location from the drop down menu.
6. If this proximity adjustment applies to a specific material type, select the appropriate Circ Modifier from the drop down menu.
7. If this is an Absolute proximity adjustment, check the box next to Absolute adjustment? If you leave the box blank, a relative proximity adjustment will be applied.
8. Enter the Proximity Adjustment between the Item Circulating Library and the Request Library.
9. Click Save.

**Org Unit Proximity Adjustments**

Show adjustments involving this branch or deeper:

[Back](#) [Next](#)

✓	#	Item Circ Lib	Item Owning Lib	Hold Pickup Lib	Hold Request Lib	Copy Location	Circ Modifier	Position	Absolute adjustment?	Proximity Adjustment
<div> <div>Item Circ Lib</div> <div>BR1</div> </div> <div> <div>Item Owning Lib</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Hold Pickup Lib</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Hold Request Lib</div> <div>BR4</div> </div> <div> <div>Copy Location</div> <div>Stacks</div> </div> <div> <div>Circ Modifier</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Position</div> <div></div> </div> <div> <div>Absolute adjustment?</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div> </div> <div> <div>Proximity Adjustment</div> <div>2</div> </div> <div> <div>Cancel</div> <div>Save</div> </div>										

This will create a one-way proximity adjustment between Org Units. In this example this adjustment will apply to items requested at by a patron BR4 and filled at BR1. To create the reciprocal proximity adjustment, for items requested at BR1 and filled at BR4, create a second proximity adjustment between the two Org Units.

## Permissions to use this Feature

To create Org Unit Proximity Adjustments, you will need the following permission:

- ADMIN\_PROXIMITY\_ADJUSTMENT

## Floating Groups

Before floating groups items could float or not. If they floated then they floated everywhere, with no restrictions.

After floating groups where an item will float is defined by what group it has been assigned to.

## Floating Groups

Each floating group comes with a name and a manual flag, plus zero or more group members. The name is used solely for selection and display purposes.

The manual flag dictates whether or not the "Manual Floating Active" checkin modifier needs to be active for an item to float. This allows for greater control over when items float. It also prevents automated checkins via SIP2 from triggering floats.

## Floating Group Members

Each member of a floating group references an org unit and has a stop depth, an optional max depth, and an exclude flag.

## Org Unit

The org unit and all descendants are included, unless max depth is set, in which case the tree is cut off at the max depth.

## Stop Depth

The stop depth is the highest point from the current item circ library to the checkin library for the item that will be traversed. If the item has to go higher than the stop depth on the tree the member rule in question is ignored.

## Max Depth

As mentioned with the org unit, the max depth is the furthest down on the tree from the org unit that gets included. This is based on the entire tree, not just off of the org unit. So in the default tree a max depth of 1 will stop at the system level no matter if org unit is set to CONS or SYS1.

## Exclude

Exclude, if set, causes floating to not happen for the member. Excludes always take priority, so you can remove an org unit from floating without having to worry about other rules overriding it.

## Examples

### Float Everywhere

This is a default floating rule to emulate the previous floating behavior for new installs and upgrades.

One member:

- Org Unit: CONS
- Stop Depth: 0
- Max Depth: Unset
- Exclude: Off

### Float Within System

This would permit an item to float anywhere within a system, but would return to the system if it was returned elsewhere.

One member:

- Org Unit: CONS
- Stop Depth: 1

- Max Depth: Unset
- Exclude: Off

## Float To All Branches

This would permit an item to float to any branch, but not to sublibraries or bookmobiles.

One member:

- Org Unit: CONS
- Stop Depth: 0
- Max Depth: 2
- Exclude: Off

## Float To All Branches Within System

This would permit an item to float to any branch in a system, but not to sublibraries or bookmobiles, and returning to the system if returned elsewhere.

One member:

- Org Unit: CONS
- Stop Depth: 1
- Max Depth: 2
- Exclude: Off

## Float Between BR1 and BR3

This would permit an item to float between BR1 and BR3 specifically, excluding sublibraries and bookmobiles.

It would consist of two members, identical other than the org unit:

- Org Unit: BR1 / BR3
- Stop Depth: 0
- Max Depth: 2
- Exclude: Off

## Float Everywhere Except BM1

This would allow an item to float anywhere except for BM1. It accomplishes this with two members.

The first includes all org units, just like Float Everywhere:

- Org Unit: CONS
- Stop Depth: 0
- Max Depth: Unset
- Exclude: Off

The second excludes BM1:

- Org Unit: BM1
- Stop Depth: 0
- Max Depth: Unset
- Exclude: On

That works because excludes are applied first.

## **Float into, but not out of, BR2**

This would allow an item to float into BR2, but once there it would never leave. Why you would want to allow items to float to but not from a single library I dunno, but here it is. This takes advantage of the fact that the rules say where we can float to, but outside of stop depth don't care where we are floating from.

One member:

- Org Unit: BR2
- Stop Depth: 0
- Max Depth: Unset
- Exclude: Off

# Chapter 36. Working with money

This section discusses how to manage and report on payments accepted by your library's circulation processes.

## Accepting credit card payments

Evergreen can interface with services like Authorize.net, stripe, PayPal, or Payflow to allow users to pay fines and other charges in the Public Catalog. Credit card settings can be configured in the [Library Settings Editor](#).

## Cash Reports

Cash reports are useful for quickly getting information about money that your library has collected from patrons. This can be helpful in a few different scenarios, such as:

1. Reconciling a cash drawer at the end of the day.
2. Seeing how popular a specific payment type is (perhaps when evaluating a food-for-fines program).

To use the cash reports,

1. Under the Administration menu, choose Local Administration.
2. Click Cash reports.
3. Select the time period and library you are interested in. This interface defaults to showing payments accepted during the current day.
4. Click Submit.



You can click on the names of columns to sort the reports.



You need the VIEW\_TRANSACTION permission to view these reports.



These payments are divided into two different types: Desk payments — in which a staff member simply accepted a credit card, check, or cash payment — and User payments — in which a staff member had to make a specific decision about whether to accept a payment of goods or work; or forgave or granted credit to a particular patron.



# Setting limits on allowed payment amounts

Two new settings have been added to prevent library staff from accidentally clearing all patron bills by scanning a barcode into the Payment Amount field, or accidentally entering the amount without a decimal point (such as you would when using a cash register).

Both settings are available via the Library Settings Editor. The Payment amount threshold for Are You Sure? dialog (**ui.circ.billing.amount\_warn**) setting identifies the amount above which staff will be asked if they're sure they want to apply the payment. The Maximum payment amount allowed (**ui.circ.billing.amount\_limit**) setting identifies the maximum amount of money that can be accepted through the staff client.

These settings only affect the staff client, not credit cards accepted through the public catalog, or direct API calls from third party tools.

# Chapter 37. User buckets

## Introduction

You can select and group a set of users into a User Bucket. You can add users to a User Bucket from the Patron Search interface or directly from the User Bucket interface by user barcode. It is also possible to add users to a User Bucket by uploading a text file that contains a list of user barcodes.

From this interface it is possible to perform a set of specific batch update operations on the group of users you have identified.

## Editing users

You can change the following fields in batch:

- Active flag
- Primary Permission Group (group application permissions consulted)
- Juvenile flag
- Home Library (if you have the UPDATE\_USER permission for both the original and destination libraries)
- Privilege Expiration Date
- Barred flag (if you have the BAR\_PATRON permission)
- Internet Access Level



You will need the UPDATE\_USER permission.

Each change set requires a name. Buckets may have multiple change sets. All users in the Bucket at the time of processing are updated when the change set is processed, and change sets are processed immediately upon successful creation. The interface delivers progress information regarding the processing stage and percent of completion.

While processing the users, the original value for each field edited is recorded for potential future rollback. Users can examine the success and failure of applied change sets.

The user will be able to rollback the entire change set, but not parts thereof. The rollback will affect only those users that were successfully updated by the original change set and may be different

from the current set of users in the Bucket. Users can manually discard change sets, removing them from the interface but preventing future rollback.

As a batch process, rather than a direct edit, this mechanism explicitly skips processing of Action/Trigger event definitions for user update, so users will not receive any notifications that they might otherwise receive when their accounts are edited.

## Deleting users

You may also delete users as a batch.



You will need the `UPDATE_USER` and `DELETE_USER` permissions.

Each delete set requires a name. Buckets may have multiple delete sets. All users in the Bucket at the time of processing are marked as deleted when the delete set is processed. The interface delivers progress information regarding the processing stage and percent of completion.

While processing the users, the original value for the "deleted" field will be recorded for potential future rollback. Users are able to examine the success and failure of applied delete sets in the same interface used for the above described change sets.

As a batch process, rather than a direct edit, this mechanism explicitly skips processing of Action/Trigger event definitions for user deletion.

This mechanism does not completely purge the user from the database. User data will still be available to system administrators with database access.

## Editing Statistical Category Entries

All users in the bucket can have their Statistical Category Entries modified. Unlike user data field updates, modification of Statistical Category Entries is permanent and cannot be rolled back. No named change sets are required. The interface will deliver progress information regarding the processing stage and percent of completion.

As a batch process, rather than a direct edit, this mechanism explicitly skips processing of Action/Trigger event definitions for user update.

# Chapter 38. Circulation timesavers and workflows

This section describes specific settings that may increase efficiency or accuracy at some libraries, but might not be suitable for every library.

## Barcode Completion

The Barcode Completion feature gives users the ability to only enter the unique part of patron and item barcodes. This can significantly reduce the amount of typing required for manual barcode input.

This feature can also be used if there is a difference between what the barcode scanner outputs and what is stored in the database, as long as the barcode that is stored has more characters than what the scanner is outputting. Barcode Completion is additive only; you cannot use it to match a stored barcode that has less characters than what is entered. For example, if your barcode scanners previously output a123123b and now exclude the prefix and suffix, you could match both formats using Barcode Completion rules.

Because this feature adds an extra database search for each enabled rule to the process of looking up a barcode, it can add extra delays to the check-out process. Please test in your environment before using in production.

## Scoping and Permissions

Local Administrator permission is needed to access the admin interface of the Barcode Completion feature.

Each rule requires an owner org unit, which is how scoping of the rules is handled. Rules are applied for staff users with the same org unit or descendants of that org unit.

## Access Points

The admin interface for Barcode Completion is located under Administration → Local Administration → Barcode Completion.

Go Back

Reload

Go Forward

Debug

Print Page

Barcode Completion Configuration

New

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

✓	#	Active	Owner	Prefix	Suffix	Length	Padding	Padding At End
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	True	LARL	123000		14	0	False
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	False	LARL	a	b	0		False
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	False	LARL			14	0	True

The barcode completion functionality is available at the following interfaces.


## Check Out Step 1: Lookup Patron by Barcode

Check Out   Items Out   Holds   Bills   Messages   Edit   Other ▾

---

Patron Barcode      Submit

## Check Out Step 2: Scanning Item Barcodes

Anderson, Leon      **Check Out**   Items Out (1)   Holds (0 / 0)   Bills (\$)

Profile	Patrons
Home Library	BR1

Barcode ▾      Submit

## Staff Client Place Hold from Catalog

Search the Catalog   [Advanced Search](#)   [Browse the Catalog](#)

Search:    Type:  ▾   Format:

[ [Refine My Original Search](#) ]

### Place Hold

☒ Place hold for patron by barcode:    **Patron Search**

☐ Place this hold for me (Administrator System Account)

Blueberry girl / written by Neil Gaiman ; illustrated by Charles Vess.

[Advanced Hold Options](#)

Pickup location:  ▾

## Check In

Checkin Items

Barcode

Barcode

Submit

Effective Date2018-04-18

Items Checked In

◀◀◻▶▶

Actions ▾

Rows 25 ▾

Page 1 ▾

▾

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Balance Ov	Barcode	Title	Route To	Circulation	Bill #	Circulation	Family Nam	Start	Checkin Da	Location	Finish
No Items To Display													

Print Receipt

☐ Trim List (20 Rows)

☐ Strict Barcode

Checkin Modifiers ▾

## Item Status

### Scan Item

Submit

OR

Choose File

No file chosen

Detail View

Item Status

◀◀◻▶▶

Actions ▾

Rows 25 ▾

Page 1 ▾

▾

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Alert Message	Barcode	Call Number	Due Date	Location	Copy Status	Title	Alerts
No Items To Display									

Print



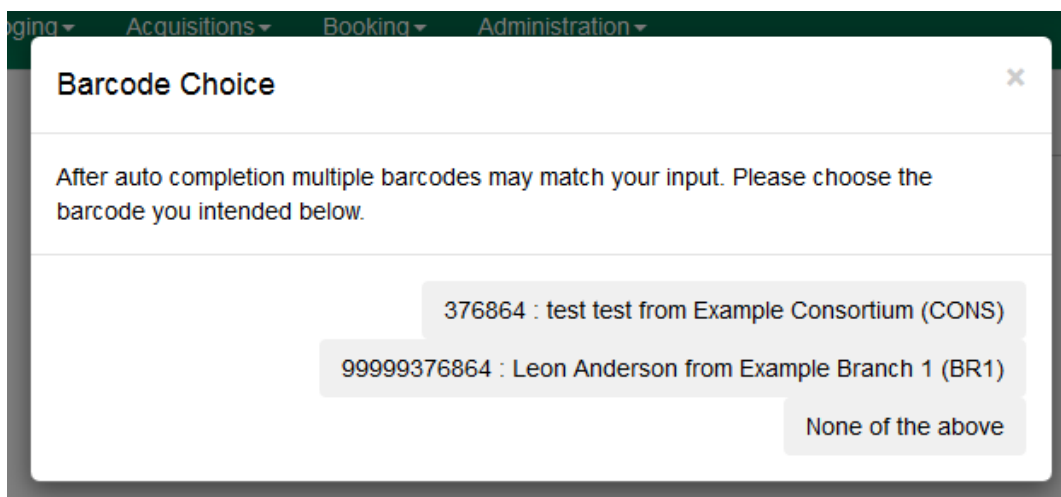
Barcode completion is also available during check out if library setting "Load patron from Checkout" is set. (Automatically detects if an actor/user barcode is scanned during check out, and starts a new check out session using that user.)



Barcode Completion does not work in the Search for Patron [by Name] interface.

## Multiple Matches

If multiple barcodes are matched, say if you have both "123" and "00000123" as valid barcodes, you will receive a list of all the barcodes that match all the rules that you have configured. It doesn't stop after the first rule that matches, or after the first valid barcode is found.



## Barcode Completion Data Fields

The following data fields can be set for each Barcode Completion rule.

Table 38.1. Barcode Completion Fields

Active	Check to indicate entry is active. Required
Owner	Setting applies to this Org Unit and to all children. Required
Prefix	Sequence that appears at the beginning of barcode.
Suffix	Sequence that appears at the end of barcode.
Length	Total length of barcode.
Padding	Character that pads out non-unique characters in the barcode.
Padding At End	Check if the padding starts at the end of the barcode.
Applies to Items	Check if entry applies to item barcodes.
Applies to Users	Check if entry applies to user barcodes.

**Length and Padding.** Length and Padding are related, you cannot use one without the other. If a barcode has to be a certain length, then it needs to be able to be padded out to that length. If a barcode has padding, then we need to know the max length that we need to pad out to. If length is set to blank or zero, or padding is left blank then they are both ignored.

**Applies to Items/Users.** One or both of these options must be checked for the rule to have any effect.

## Barcode Completion Configuration

[Back](#) [Next](#) [Filter](#)

Active ☐

Owner

---

Prefix

Suffix

Length

Padding

Padding At End ☐

---

Applies to Items ☐

Applies to Users ☐

## Create, Update, Filter, Delete/Disable Rules

Go Back

Reload

Go Forward

Debug

Print Page

Barcode Completion Configuration

Back

Next

Filter

New

✓	#	Active	Owner	Prefix	Suffix	Length	Padding	Padding At End
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	True	LARL	123000		14	0	False
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	False	LARL	a	b	0		False
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	False	LARL			14	0	True

In the Barcode Completion admin interface at Administration → Local Administration → Barcode Completion you can create, update and disable rules.

### Create Rules

To create a new rule click on the New button in the upper right corner. When you are done with editing the new rule click the Save button. If you want to cancel the new rule creation click the Cancel button.

### Update Rules

To edit a rule double click on the rule in the main list.



## Filter Rules

It may be useful to filter the rules list if there are a large number of rules. Click on the filter link to bring up the Filter Results dialog box. You can filter on any of the data fields and you can setup multiple filter rules. Click Apply to enable the filter rules, only the rows that match will now be displayed.

To clear out the filter rules, delete all of the filter rules by clicking the X next to each rule, and then click Apply.

## Delete/Disable Rules

It isn't possible to delete a rule from the database from the admin interface. If a rule is no longer needed set Active to "False" to disable it. To keep the number of rules down, reuse inactive rules when creating new rules.

## Examples

In all these examples, the unique part of the barcode is 123. So that is all that users will need to type to match the full barcode.

### Barcode With Prefix and Padding

Barcode: 4545000123

To match this 10 character barcode by only typing in 123 we need the following settings.

- Active - Checked
- Owner - Set to your org unit.
- Prefix - 4545 - This is the prefix that the barcode starts with.
- Length - 10 - Total length of the barcode.
- Padding - 0 - Zeros will be used to pad out non significant parts of the barcode.
- Applies to Items and/or Applies to Users - Checked

The system takes the 123 that you entered and adds the prefix to the beginning of it. Then adds zeros between the prefix and your number to pad it out to 10 characters. Then it searches the database for that barcode.

### Barcode With Suffix

Barcode: 123000book

To match this 10 character barcode by only typing in 123 we need the following settings.

- Active - Checked

- Owner - Set to your org unit.
- Suffix - book - This is the suffix that the barcode ends with.
- Length - 10 - Total length of the barcode.
- Padding - 0 - Zeros will be used to pad out non significant parts of the barcode.
- Padding at End - Checked
- Applies to Items and/or Applies to Users - Checked

The system takes the 123 that you entered and adds the suffix to the end of it. Then adds zeros between your number and the suffix to pad it out to 10 characters. Then it searches the database for that barcode.

## Barcode With Left Padding

Barcode: 0000000123

To match this 10 character barcode by only typing in 123 we need the following settings.

- Active - Checked
- Owner - Set to your org unit.
- Length - 10 - Total length of the barcode.
- Padding - 0 - Zeros will be used to pad out non significant parts of the barcode.
- Applies to Items and/or Applies to Users - Checked

The system takes the 123 that you entered, then adds zeros between your number and the left to pad it out to 10 characters. Then it searches the database for that barcode.

## Barcode With Right Padding

Barcode: 1230000000

To match this 10 character barcode by only typing in 123 we need the following settings.

- Active - Checked
- Owner - Set to your org unit.
- Length - 10 - Total length of the barcode.
- Padding - 0 - Zeros will be used to pad out non significant parts of the barcode.
- Padding at End - Checked

- Applies to Items and/or Applies to Users - Checked

The system takes the 123 that you entered, then adds zeros between your number and the right to pad it out to 10 characters. Then it searches the database for that barcode.

## Barcode of any Length with Prefix and Suffix

Barcode: a123b

To match this 5 character barcode by only typing in 123 we need the following settings. This use of Barcode Completion doesn't save many keystrokes, but it does allow you to handle the case where your barcode scanners at one point were set to output a prefix and suffix which was stored in the database. Now your barcode scanners no longer include the prefix and suffix. These settings will simply add the prefix and suffix to any barcode entered and search for that.

- Active - Checked
- Owner - Set to your org unit.
- Length/Padding - 0/null - Set the length to 0 and/or leave the padding blank.
- Prefix - a - This is the prefix that the barcode starts with.
- Suffix - b - This is the suffix that the barcode starts with.
- Applies to Items and/or Applies to Users - Checked

The system takes the 123 that you entered, then adds the prefix and suffix specified. Then it searches the database for that barcode. Because no length or padding was entered, this rule will add the prefix and suffix to any barcode that is entered and then search for that valid barcode.

## Testing

To test this feature, setup the rules that you want, then setup items/users with barcodes that should match. Then try scanning the short version of those barcodes in the various supported access points.

## Address Alert

The Address Alert module gives administrators the ability to notify staff with a custom message when addresses with certain patterns are entered in patron records.

This feature only serves to provide pertinent information to your library system's circulation staff during the registration process. An alert will not prevent the new patron account from being registered and the information will not be permanently associated with the patron account.

To access the Address Alert module, select Administration → Local Administration → Address Alerts.



You must have Local Administrator permissions or ADMIN\_ADDRESS\_ALERT permission to access the Address Alert module.

## General Usage Examples

- Alert staff when an address for a large apartment is entered to prompt them to ask for unit number.
- Alert staff when the address of a hotel or other temporary housing is entered.
- Alert staff when an address for a different country is entered.
- Alert staff when a specific city or zip code is entered if that city or zip code needs to be handled in a special way. If you have a neighboring city that you don't have a reciprocal relationship with, you could notify staff that a fee card is required for this customer.

## Access Control and Scoping

Each address alert is tied to an Org Unit and will only be matched against staff client instances of that Org Unit and its children.

When viewing the address alerts you will only see the alerts associated with the specific org unit selected in the "Context Org Unit" selection box. You won't see alerts associated with parent org units, so the list of alerts isn't a list of all alerts that may effect your org unit, only of the ones that you can edit.

The specific permission that controls access to configuring this feature is ADMIN\_ADDRESS\_ALERT. Local Administrator level users will already have this permission. It is possible for the Local Administrator to grant this permission to other staff.

## Adding a new Address Alert

How to add an address to the alert list:

1. Log into the Evergreen Staff Client using a Local Administrator account or another account that has been granted the proper permission.
2. Click on Administration → Local Administration → Address Alerts.
3. Click "New Address Alert."
4. A form will open with the following fields to fill out:

Table 38.2. New Address Alert Fields

Field	Description
-------	-------------

Owner	Which Org Unit owns this alert. Set this to your system or branch.
Active	Check-box that controls if the alert is active or not. Inactive alerts are not processed.
Match All Fields	Check-box that controls if all the fields need to match to trigger the alert(checked), or only at least one field needs to match(unchecked).
Alert Message	Message that will be displayed to staff when this alert is triggered.
Street (1)	Street 1 field regular expression.
Street (2)	Street 2 field regular expression.
City	City regular expression.
County	County regular expression.
State	State regular expression.
Country	County regular expression.
Postal Code	Postal Code regular expression.
Address Alert ID	Displays the internal database id for alert after the alert has been saved.
Billing Address	Check-box that specifies that the alert will only match a billing address if checked.
Mailing Address	Check-box that specifies that the alert will only match a mailing address if checked.

5. Click save once you have finished.

## Editing an Address Alert

To make changes to an existing alert, double click on the alert in the list. The editing form will appear, make your changes and click save or cancel when you are done.

If you don't see your alerts, make sure the "Context Org Unit" selection box has the correct Org Unit selected.

## Deleting an Address Alert

To delete an alert or many alerts, click the selection check-box for all alerts you would like to delete. Then click the "Delete Selected" button at the top of the screen.

## Staff View of Address Alerts

When an Address Alert is triggered by a matching address the staff will see the address block highlighted with a red dashed line, along with an "Address Alert" block which contains the alert message.

Here is an example of what staff would see.

The screenshot shows a web form with two sections. The top section has fields for 'Country' (USA), 'Valid Address?' (checked), and 'Within City Limits?' (checked). The bottom section has a tabbed interface with 'Address' selected, showing fields for 'Type' (MAILING), 'Postal Code' (12345), 'Street (1)' (123 example street), 'Street (2)', 'City' (springfield), 'County' (Newclear), 'State' (CO), and 'Country' (highlighted in yellow with a warning icon). A red dashed box highlights the 'Address' tab and the 'Valid Address?' checkbox. A red arrow points from the 'Valid Address?' checkbox to an 'Address Alert' message box that says 'Address Alert Triggered - Please note!'. Another red arrow points from the 'Address' tab to the same message box.

## Regular Expressions / Wildcards

All of the patterns entered to match the various address fields are evaluated as case-insensitive regular expressions by default.



Address Alerts use POSIX Regular Expressions included in the PostgreSQL database engine. See the PostgreSQL documentation for full details.

If you want to do a case-sensitive match you need to prepend the pattern with "(?c)"

The simplest regular expression that acts as a wildcard is ".\*", that matches any type of character zero or more times.

## Examples

Apartment address. Match an apartment address to prompt for unit number.

1. Choose Owner Org Unit.
2. Active = Checked
3. Match All Fields = Checked
4. Alert Message = "This is a large apartment building, Please ask customer for unit number."
5. Street (1) = "1212 Evergreen Lane.\*"
6. City = "mytown"

All addresses on street. Match all addresses on a certain street. Matches ave and avenue because of ending wildcard.

1. Choose Owner Org Unit.
2. Active = Checked
3. Match All Fields = Checked
4. Alert Message = "This street is in a different county, please setup reciprocal card."
5. Street (1) = ".\* Evergreen Ave.\*"
6. City = "mytown"

Match list of cities. Match several different cities with one alert. Could be used if certain cities don't have reciprocal agreements. Note the use of parentheses and the | character to separate the different options.

1. Choose Owner Org Unit.
2. Active = Checked
3. Match All Fields = Checked
4. Alert Message = "Customer must purchase a Fee card."
5. City = "(Emeryville|San Jose|San Francisco)"

## Development

Links to resources with more information on how and why this feature was developed and where the various source files are located.

- Launchpad ticket for the feature request and development of address alerts - <https://bugs.launchpad.net/evergreen/+bug/898248>

# Chapter 39. Library closures

This section describes both everyday closures and specific details suitable for school and academic libraries that operate on a term or semester system.

## Setting regular library hours

You may do this in Administration > Server Administration > Organizational Units.

The Hours of Operation tab is where you enter regular, weekly hours. Holiday and other closures are set in the Closed Dates Editor. Hours of operation and closed dates impact due dates and fine accrual.

## Set closed dates using the Closed Dates Editor

These dates are in addition to your regular weekly closed days. Both regular closed days and those entered in the Closed Dates Editor affect due dates and fines:

- **Due dates.** Due dates that would fall on closed days are automatically pushed forward to the next open day. Likewise, if an item is checked out at 8pm, for example, and would normally be due on a day when the library closes before 8pm, Evergreen pushes the due date forward to the next open day.
- **Overdue fines.** Overdue fines may not be charged on days when the library is closed. This fine behavior depends on how the Charge fines on overdue circulations when closed setting is configured in the Library Settings Editor.

Closed dates do not affect the processing delays for Action/Triggers. For example, if your library has a trigger event that marks items as lost after 30 days, that 30 day period will include both open and closed dates.

## Adding a closure

1. Select Administration > Local Administration.
2. Select Closed Dates Editor.
3. Select type of closure: typically Single Day or Multiple Day.
4. Click the Calendar gadget to select the All Day date or starting and ending dates.
5. Enter a Reason for closure (optional).
6. Click Apply to all of my libraries if your organizational unit has children units that will also be closed. This will add closed date entries to all of those child libraries.







By default, creating a closed date in a parent organizational unit does not also close the child unit. For example, adding a system-level closure will not also close all of that system's branches, unless you check the Apply to all of my libraries box.

7. Click Save.

---

Add Single Day Closing Add Multiple Date Closing Add Detailed Closing

---

All Day From   Through  

---

Reason for closing:

Apply to all of my libraries ☐

---

Save Cancel

Now that your organizational structure is established, you can begin configuring permissions for the staff users of your Evergreen system.

## Detailed closure

If your closed dates include a portion of a business day, you should create a detailed closing.

1. Select Administration → Local Administration.
2. Select Closed Dates Editor.
3. Select Add Detailed Closing.
4. Enter applicable dates, times, and a descriptive reason for the closing.
5. Click Save.
6. Check the Apply to all of my libraries box if your library is a multi-branch system and the closing applies to all of your branches.

# Chapter 40. Emergency Closing Handler

## Introduction

The Closed Dates Editor now includes an Emergency Closing feature that allows libraries to shift due dates and expiry dates to the next open day. Overdue fines will be automatically voided for the day(s) the library is marked closed. Once an Emergency Closing is processed, it is permanent and cannot be rolled back.

## Administration

### Permissions

To create an Emergency Closing, the EMERGENCY\_CLOSING permission needs to be granted to the user for all locations to be affected by an emergency closing.

## Create an emergency closing

The Emergency Closing feature is located within the Closed Dates Editor screen, which can be accessed via Administration → Local Administration → Closed Dates Editor.

Within the closed dates editor screen, scheduled closed dates are listed and can be scoped by specific org unit and date. The date filter in the upper right-hand corner will show upcoming library closings on or after the selected date in the filter.

Select Add closing to begin the emergency closing process. A pop-up will appear with fields to fill out.

Library - Using the dropdown window, select the org unit which will be closing.

Apply to all of my libraries - When selected, this checkbox will apply the emergency closing date to the selected org unit and any associated child org unit(s).

Closing Type - The following Closing Type options are available in a drop down window: \* One full day \* Multiple days \* Detailed closing

The Multiple days and Detailed closing options will display different date options (e.g. start and end dates) in the next field if selected.

Date - Select which day or days the library will be closed.



NOTE The Closed Dates editor is now date-aware. If a selected closed date is either in the past, or nearer in time than the end of the longest configured circulation period, staff will see a notification that says "Possible Emergency Closing" in both the dialog box and in the bottom right-hand corner.

Reason - Label the reason for library closing accordingly, e.g. 3/15 Snow Day

## Emergency Closing Handler

When a date is chosen that is nearer in time than the end of the longest configured circulation period or in the past, then a Possible Emergency Closing message will appear in the pop-up and in the bottom right-hand corner of the screen. Below the Possible Emergency Closing message, two checkboxes appear: Emergency and Process Immediately.



NOTE The Emergency checkbox must still be manually selected in order to actually set the closing as an Emergency Closing.

By selecting the Emergency checkbox, the system will void any overdue fines incurred for that emergency closed day or days and push back any of the following dates to the next open day as determined by the library's settings: \* item due dates \* shelf expire times \* booking start times

When selecting the Process Immediately checkbox, Evergreen will enact the Emergency Closing changes immediately once the Emergency Closed Date information is saved. If Process Immediately is not selected at the time of creation, staff will need to go back and edit the closing later, or the Emergency processing will not occur.

Upon clicking OK, a progress bar will appear on-screen. After completion, the Closed Dates Editor screen will update, and under the Emergency Closing Processing Summary column, the number of affected/processed Circulations, Holds, and Reservations will be listed.

## Editing Closing to process Emergency Closing

If Process immediately is not selected during an Emergency Closing event creation, staff will need to edit the existing Emergency Closing event and process the affected items.

In the Closed Dates Editor screen, select the existing Emergency Closing event listed. Then, go to Actions → Edit closing.

A pop-up display will appear with the same format as creating a Closed Dates event with the Emergency checkbox checked and the Process Immediately un-checked at the bottom. Select the Process immediately checkbox, and then OK. A progress bar will appear on-screen, the Emergency Closing processing will take occur, and the Closed Dates Editor display will update.

## Hard due dates

This feature allows you to specify a specific due date within your circulation policies. This is particularly useful for academic and school libraries, who may wish to make certain items due at the end of a semester or term.



To work with hard due dates, you will need the `CREATE_CIRC_DURATION`, `UPDATE_CIRC_DURATION`, and `DELETE_CIRC_DURATION` permissions at the consortium level.

### Creating a hard due date

Setting up hard due dates is a two-step process. You must first create a hard due date, and then populate it with specific values.

To create a hard due date:

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → Hard Due Date Changes.
2. Click New Hard Due Date.
3. In the Name field, enter a name for your hard due date. Note that each hard due date can have multiple values, so it's best to use a generic name here, such as "End of semester."
4. In the Owner field, select the appropriate org unit for your new hard due date.
5. In the Current Ceiling Date field, select any value. This field is required, but its value will be overwritten in subsequent steps, so you may enter an arbitrary date here.
6. Check the Always Use? checkbox if you want items to only receive the due dates you specify, regardless of when they would ordinarily be due. If you leave this box unchecked, your specified due dates will serve as "ceiling" values that limit, rather than override, other circulation rules. In other words, with this box checked, items may be due only on the specified dates. With the box unchecked, items may be due on or before the specified dates, simply not after.
7. Click Save.

To add date values to your hard due date:

1. Click the hyperlinked name of the due date you just created.
2. Click on New Hard Due Date Value

3. In the Ceiling Date field, enter the specific date you would like items to be due.
4. In the Active Date field, enter the date you want this specific due date value to take effect.
5. Click Save.
6. Each Hard Due Date can include multiple values. For example, you can repeat these steps to enter specific due dates for several semesters using this same screen.

After creating a hard due date and assigning it values, you can apply it by adding it to a circulation policy.

# Chapter 41. Booking Module Administration

## Creating Bookable Non-Bibliographic Resources

Staff with the required permissions (Circulator and above) can create bookable non-bibliographic resources such as laptops, projectors, and meeting rooms.

The following pieces make up a non-bibliographic resource:

- Resource Type
- Resource Attribute
- Resource Attribute Values
- Resource
- Resource Attribute Map

You need to create resource types and resource attributes (features of the resource types), and add booking items (resources) to individual resource type. Each resource attribute may have multiple values. You need to link the applicable features (resource attributes and values) to individual item (resource) through the Resource Attribute Map. Before you create resources (booking items) you need to have a resource type and associated resource attributes and values, if any, for them.

### Create New Resource Type

1) Select Administration → Booking Administration → Resource Types.



2) A list of current resource types will appear. Use Back and Next buttons to browse the whole list.

1 Server Settings

Go Back Reload Go Forward

### Resource Types

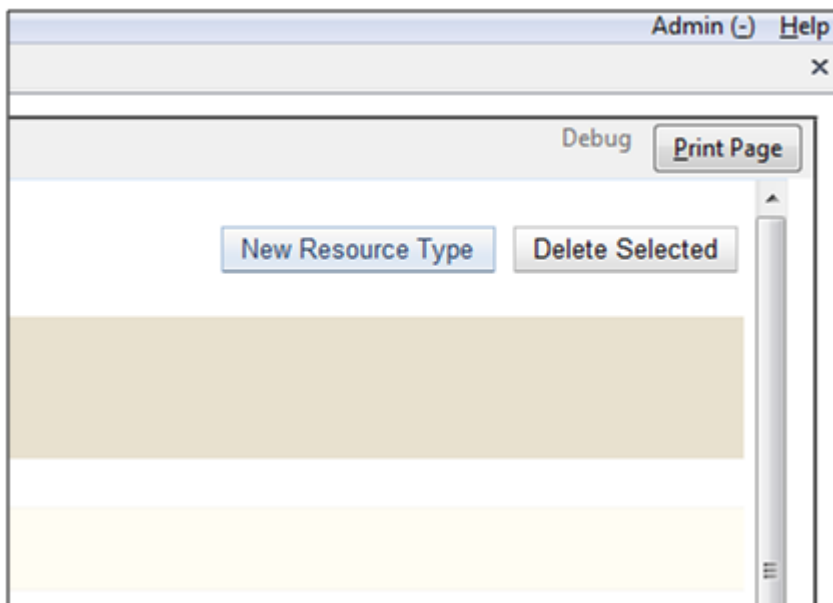
[Back](#) [Next](#)

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Resource Type Name	Fine Interval	Fine Amount	Owning Library	Catalog Item	Transferable	Inter-booking and Inter-circulation Interval	Max Fine Amount
<input type="checkbox"/>	Dora's box		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Double Fudge		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ereader	1 day	3.00	BPR	False	False	01:00:00	10.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Horse		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Projector	03:00:00	2.00	BPR	False	False	00:15:00	20.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Room		0.00	BPR	False	False	00:20:00	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Superfudge		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Connector	02:00:00	0.50	BPR	False	False	00:15:00	5.00



You may also see cataloged items in the list. Those items have been marked bookable or booked before.

3) To create a new resource type, click New Resource Type in the top right corner, .



4) A box will appear in which you create your new type of resource.

Resource Type Name	Laptop
Fine Interval	2 hours
Fine Amount	0.50
Owning Library	BPR
Catalog Item	<input type="checkbox"/>
Transferable	<input type="checkbox"/>
Inter-booking and Inter-circulation Interval	15 minutes
Max Fine Amount	20.00
Cancel	Save

- Resource Type Name - Give your resource a name.
- Fine Interval - How often will fines be charged? This period can be input in several ways:



- second(s), minute(s), hour(s), day(s), week(s), month(s), year(s)
- sec(s), min(s)
- s, m, h
- 00:00:30, 00:01:00, 01:00:00

- Fine Amount - The amount that will be charged at each Fine Interval.
- Owning Library - The home library of the resource.
- Catalog Item - (Function not currently available.)
- Transferable - This allows the item to be transferred between libraries.
- Inter-booking and Inter-circulation Interval - The amount of time required by your library between the return of a resource and a new reservation for the resource. This interval uses \* the same input conventions as the Fine Interval.
- Max Fine Amount - The amount at which fines will stop generating.

5) Click Save when you have entered the needed information.





6) The new resource type will appear in the list.

Server Settings								
Go Back   Reload   Go Forward								
Resource Types								
<a href="#">Back</a> <a href="#">Next</a>								
✓	Resource Type Name	Fine Interval	Fine Amount	Owning Library	Catalog Item	Transferable	Inter-booking and Inter-circulation Interval	Max Fine Amount
<input type="checkbox"/>	Dora's box		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Double Fudge		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Ereader	1 day	3.00	BPR	False	False	01:00:00	10.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Horse		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Laptop	02:00:00	0.50	BPR	False	False	00:15:00	20.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Projector	03:00:00	2.00	BPR	False	False	00:15:00	20.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	Room		0.00	BPR	False	False	00:20:00	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Superfudge		0.00	BPR	True	True		
<input type="checkbox"/>	Video Connector	02:00:00	0.50	BPR	False	False	00:15:00	5.00

## Create New Resource Attribute

- 1) Select Administration → Booking Administration → Resource Attributes.
- 2) Click New Resource Attribute in the top right corner.
- 3) A box will appear in which you can add the attributes of the resource. Attributes are categories of descriptive information that are provided to the staff member when the booking request is made. For example, an attribute of a projector may be the type of projector. Other attributes might be the number of seats available in a room, or the computing platform of a laptop.

Resource Attribute Name	Computing Platform
Owning Library	BPR
Resource Type	Laptop
Is Required	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cancel	Save

- Resource Attribute Name - Give your attribute a name.
- Owning Library - The home library of the resource.
- Resource Type - Type in the first letter to list then choose the Resource Type to which the Attribute is applicable.
- Is Required - (Function not currently available.)

4) Click Save when the necessary information has been entered.

5) The added attribute will appear in the list.



One resource type may have multiple attributes. You may repeat the above procedure to add more.

## Create New Resource Attribute Value

1) One resource attribute may have multiple values. To add new attribute value, select Administration → Booking Administration → Resource Attribute Values.

2) Click New Resource Attribute Value in the top right corner.

3) A box will appear in which you assign a value to a particular attribute. Values can be numbers, words, or a combination of them, that describe the particular aspects of the resource that have been defined as Attributes. As all values appear on the same list for selection, values should be as unique as possible. For example, a laptop may have a computing platform that is either PC or Mac.

Owning Library	BPR
Resource Attribute	Computing Platform
Valid Value	PC
Cancel	Save

- Owning Library - The home library of the resource.
- Resource Attribute - The attribute you wish to assign the value to.
- Valid Value - Enter the value for your attribute.

4) Click Save when the required information has been added.

5) The attribute value will appear in the list. Each attribute should have at least two values attached to it; repeat this process for all applicable attribute values.

## Create New Resource

1) Add items to a resource type. Click Administration → Booking Administration → Resources.

2) Click New Resource in the top right corner.

3) A box will appear. Add information for the resource.

Owning Library	BPR
Resource Type	Laptop
Barcode	98723000112255
Overbook	<input type="checkbox"/>
Is Deposit Required	<input type="checkbox"/>
Deposit Amount	
User Fee	
Cancel	Save

- Owning Library - The home library of the resource.
  - Resource Type - Type in the first letter of the resource type's name to list then select the resource type for your item.
  - Barcode - Barcode for the resource.
  - Overbook - This allows a single item to be reserved, picked up, and returned by multiple patrons during overlapping or identical time periods.
  - Is Deposit Required - (Function not currently available.)
  - Deposit Amount - (Function not currently available.)
  - User Fee - (Function not currently available.)
- 4) Click Save when the required information has been added.
- 5) The resource will appear in the list.



One resource type may have multiple resources attached.

## Map Resource Attributes and Values to Resources

- 1) Use Resource Attribute Maps to bring together the resources and their attributes and values. Select Administration → Booking Administration → Resource Attribute Maps.
- 2) Click New Resource Attribute Map in the right top corner.
- 3) A box will appear in which you will map your attributes and values to your resources.

Resource	98723000112255
Resource Attribute	Computing Platform
Attribute Value	PC
Cancel	Save

- Resource - Enter the barcode of your resource.
- Resource Attribute - Select an attribute that belongs to the Resource Type.

- Attribute Value - Select a value that belongs to your chosen attribute and describes your resource. If your attribute and value do not belong together you will be unable to save.

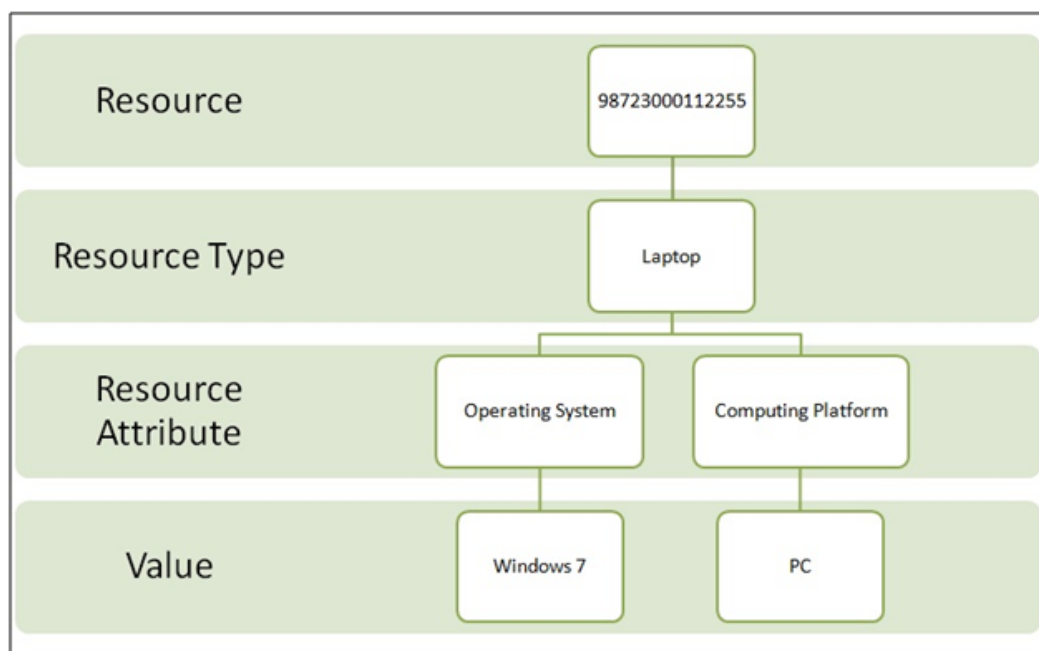
4) Click Save once you have entered the required information.



A resource may have multiple attributes and values. Repeat the above steps to map all.

5) The resource attribute map will appear in the list.

Once all attributes have been mapped your resource will be part of a hierarchy similar to the example below.



## Editing Non-Bibliographic Resources

Staff with the required permissions can edit aspects of existing non-bibliographic resources. For example, resource type can be edited in the event that the fine amount for a laptop changes from \$2.00 to \$5.00.

### Editing Resource Types

- 1) Bring up your list of resource types. Select Administration → Booking Administration → Resource Types.
- 2) A list of current resource types will appear.
- 3) Double click anywhere on the line of the resource type you would like to edit.

4) The resource type box will appear. Make your changes and click Save.

5) Following the same procedure you may edit Resource Attributes, Attributes Values, Resources and Attribute Map by selecting them on Administration → Booking Administration.

## Deleting Non-bibliographic Resources

1) To delete a booking resource, go to Administration → Booking Administration → Resources.

2) Select the checkbox in front the resource you want to delete. Click Delete Selected. The resource will disappear from the list.

Following the same procedure you may delete Resource Attributes Maps.

You may also delete Resource Attribute Values, Resource Attributes and Resource Types. But you have to delete them in the reverse order when you create them to make sure the entry is not in use when you try to delete it.

This is the deletion order: Resource Attribute Map/Resources → Resource Attribute Values → Resource Attributes → Resource Types.

# Chapter 42. Print (Receipt) Templates

The print templates follow W3C HTML standards (see <http://w3schools.com/html/default.asp>) and can make use of CSS and [Angular JS](#) to a certain extent.

The Receipt Template Editor can be found at: Administration → Workstation → Print Templates

The Editor can also be found on the default home page of the staff client.

Receipts come in various types: Bills, checkout, items, holds, transits and Payments.

## Receipt Templates

This is a complete list of the receipts currently in use in Evergreen.

Table 42.1. List of Receipts

Bills, Current	Listing of current bills on an account.
Bills, Historic	Listing of bills that have had payments made on them. This used on the Bill History Transaction screen.
Bills, Payment	Patron payment receipt
Checkin	List of items that have been entered in to the check-in screen.
Checkout	List of items currently checked out by a patron during the transaction.
Hold Transit Slip	This is printed when a hold goes in-transit to another library.
Hold Shelf Slip	This prints when a hold is fulfilled.
Holds for Bib Record	Prints a list of holds on a Title record.
Holds for Patron	Prints a list of holds on a patron record.
Hold Pull List	Prints the Holds Pull List.
Hold Shelf List	Prints a list of hold that are waiting to be picked up.
In-House List	Use Prints a list of items imputed into In-house use.
Item Status	Prints a list of items imputed into Item Status.
Items Out	Prints the list of items a patron has checked out.
Patron Address	Prints the current patrons address.
Patron Note	Prints a note on a patron's record.

- Renew List of items that have been renewed using the Renew Item Screen.
- Transit List Prints the list of items in-transit from the Transit List.
- Transit Slip This is printed when an items goes in-transit to another location.

## Editing Receipts

To edit a Receipt:

1. Select Administration → Workstation → Print Templates.
2. Choose the Receipt in the drop down list.
3. If you are using Hatch, you can choose different printers for different types of receipts with the Force Content field. If not, leave that field blank. Printer Settings can be set at Administration → Workstation → Printer Settings.

4. Make edits to the Receipt on the right hand side.

5. Click out of the section you are editing to see what your changes will look right on the Left hand side.
6. Click Save Locally in the Upper right hand corner.



# Formatting Receipts

Print templates use variables for various pieces of information coming from the Evergreen database. These variables deal with everything from the library name to the due date of an item. Information from the database is entered in the templates with curly brackets `{{term}}`.

Example: `{{checkout.title}}`

Some print templates have sections that are repeated for each item in a list. For example, the portion of the Checkout print template below repeats every item that is checked out in HTML list format by means of the ng-repeat in the li tag.

```
<ol>
<li ng-repeat="checkout in circulations">
  <b>{{checkout.title}}</b><br/>
  Barcode: {{checkout.copy.barcode}}<br/>
  Due: {{checkout.circ.due_date | date:"short"}}<br/>
</li>
</ol>
```

## Text Formatting

General text formatting

Goal	Original	Code	Result
Bold (HTML)	hello	<code>&lt;b&gt;hello&lt;/b&gt;</code>	hello
Bold (CSS)	hello	<code>&lt;span style="font-weight:bold;"&gt;hello&lt;/span&gt;</code>	hello
Capitalize	circulation	<code>&lt;span style="text-transform:capitalize;"&gt;circulation&lt;/span&gt;</code>	Circulation
Currency	1	<code>{{1   currency}}</code>	\$1.00

## Date Formatting

If you do not format dates, they will appear in a system format which isn't easily readable.

Code	Result
	2017-08-01T14:18:51.445Z
<code>{{today   date:'short'}}</code>	8/1/17 10:18 AM
<code>{{today   date:'M/d/yyyy'}}</code>	8/1/2017

## Currency Formatting

Add `" | currency"` after any dollar amount that you wish to display as currency.

Example: `{{xact.summary.balance_owed | currency}}` prints as **\$2.50**

# Conditional Formatting

You can use Angular JS to only print a line if the data matches. For example:

```
<div ng-if="hold.email_notify == 't'">Notify by email: {{patron.email}}</div>
```

This will only print the "Notify by email:" line if email notification is enabled for that hold.

Example for checkout print template that will only print the amount a patron owes if there is a balance:

```
<span ng-if="patron_money.balance_owed">You owe the library  
${{patron_money.balance_owed}}</span>
```

See also: <https://docs.angularjs.org/api/ng/directive/ngIf>

# Substrings

To print just a sub-string of a variable, you can use a `limitTo` function. `{{variable | limitTo:limit:begin}}` where `limit` is the number of characters you are wanting, and `begin` (optional) is where you want to start printing those characters. To limit the variable to the first four characters, you can use `{{variable | limitTo:4}}` to get "vari". To limit to the last five characters you can use `{{variable | limitTo:-5}}` to get "iable". And `{{variable | limitTo:3:3}}` will produce "ria".

Original	Code	Result
The Sisterhood of the Traveling Pants	{{checkout.title   limitTo:10}}	The Sisterhood of th
123456789	{{patron.card.barcode   limitTo:-5}}	56789
Roberts	{{patron.family_name   limitTo:3:3}}	ber

# Images

You can use HTML and CSS to add an image to your print template if you have the image uploaded onto a publicly available web server. (It will currently only work with images on a secure (https) site.) For example:

```

```

# Sort Order

You can sort the items in an `ng-repeat` block using `orderBy`. For example, the following will sort a list of holds by the shelving location first, then by the call number:

```
<tr ng-repeat="hold_data in holds orderBy :  
['copy.location.name','volume.label']">
```

## Subtotals

You can use AngularJS to add information from each iteration of a loop together to create a subtotal. This involves setting an initial variable before the ng-repeat loop begins, adding an amount to that variable from within each loop, and then displaying the final amount at the end.

```
<div>You checked out the following items:</div>
<br/>
<div ng-init="transactions.subtotal=0">                                <!-- ❶ -->
<ol>
<div ng-repeat="checkout in circulations">
  <li ng-init="transactions.subtotal=transactions.subtotal -- checkout.copy.price"> <!-- ❷ -->
    <b>{{checkout.title}}</b><br/>
    Barcode: {{checkout.copy.barcode}}<br/>
    Due: {{checkout.circ.due_date | date:"M/d/yyyy"}}
  </li>
</div>
</ol>
<div style="font-weight:bold;">Total Amount Owed: {{patron_money.balance_owed | currency}}</div>
<div style="font-weight:bold;border:1px dotted black; padding:5px;text-align:center;">
You Saved<br/>
{{transactions.subtotal | currency}}<br/>                                <!-- ❸ -->
by borrowing from the library!</div>
```

- ❶ This line sets the variable.
- ❷ This adds the list item's price to the variable.
- ❸ This prints the total of the variable.

## Exporting and importing Customized Receipts

Once you have your receipts set up on one machine you can export your receipts, and then load them on to another machine. Just remember to Save Locally once you import the receipts on the new machine.

### Exporting templates

As you can only save a template on to the computer you are working on you will need to export the template if you have more than one computer that prints out receipts (i.e., more than one computer on the circulation desk, or another computer in the workroom that you use to checkin items or capture holds with)

1. Export.
2. Select the location to save the template to, name the template, and click Save.
3. Click OK.

### Importing Templates

1. Click Import.
2. Navigate to and select the template that you want to import. Click Open.
3. Click OK.

4. Click Save Locally.

5. Click OK.



Clearing your browser's cache/temporary files will clear any print template customizations that you make unless you are using Hatch to store your customizations. Be sure to export a copy of your customizations as a backup so that you can import it as needed.



If you are modifying your templates and you do not see the updates appear on your printed receipt, you may need to go into Administration → Workstation → Stored Preferences and delete the stored preferences related to the print template that you modified (for example, `eg.print.template_context.bills_current`).

# Chapter 43. Self checkout

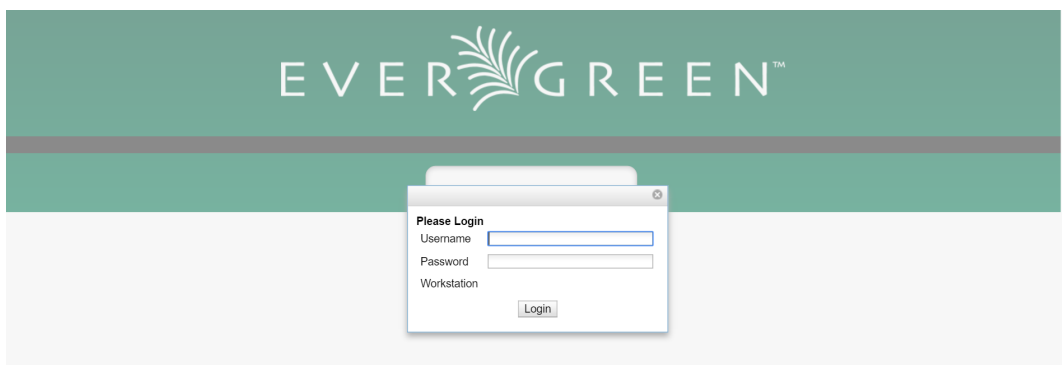
## Introduction

Evergreen includes a self check interface designed for libraries that simply want to record item circulation without worrying about security mechanisms like magnetic strips or RFID tags.

## Initializing the self check

The self check interface runs in a web browser. Before patrons can use the self check station, a staff member must initialize the interface by logging in.

1. Open your self check interface page in a web browser. By default, the URL is **https://[hostname]/eg/circ/selfcheck/main**, where [hostname] represents the host name of your Evergreen web server.
2. Log in with a staff account with circulation permissions.



## Setting library hours of operation

When the self check prints a receipt, the default template includes the library's hours of operation in the receipt. If the library has no configured hours of operation, the attempt to print a receipt fails and the browser hangs.

## Configuring self check behavior

Several library settings control the behavior of the self check:

- Block copy checkout status: Prevent the staff user's permission override from enabling patrons to check out items that they would not normally be able to check out, such as the "On reservation shelf" status. The status IDs are found in the **config.copy\_status** database table.
- Patron Login Timeout: Automatically logs the patron out of the self check after a certain period of inactivity. NOT CURRENTLY SUPPORTED

- **Pop-up alert for errors:** In addition to displaying an alert message on the screen, this setting raises patron awareness of possible problems by raising an alert box that the patron must dismiss before they can check out another item.
- **Require Patron Password:** By default, users can enter either their user name or barcode, without having to enter their password, to access their account. This setting requires patrons to enter their password for additional security.
- **Workstation Required:** If set, the URL must either include a **?ws=[workstation]** parameter, where [workstation] is the name of a registered Evergreen workstation, or the staff member must register a new workstation when they login. The workstation parameter ensures that check outs are recorded as occurring at the correct library.

## Using the self check

See the circulation manual for documentation about using the self check interface.

# Part X. Search Settings

# Table of Contents

44. Adjusting Relevance Ranking and Indexing .....	233
Metabib Class FTS Config Maps .....	233
Metabib Field FTS Config Maps .....	233
45. Statistical Popularity Badges .....	235
Popularity Rating and Calculation .....	235
Creating Popularity Badges .....	235
New Global Flags .....	238
Sorting by Popularity in the OPAC .....	238
Popularity Badge Example .....	239
46. Multilingual Search in Evergreen .....	242
Search Syntax .....	242
Advanced Search .....	243
Adding Subfields to the Index .....	243
47. Infrastructure Changes to Authority Browse .....	244
Backend functionality .....	244
Staff User Interface .....	244
48. Virtual Index Definitions .....	246
Keyword Virtual Index Definition .....	246
Configuring Virtual Index Definitions .....	246
Search Term Highlighting in Search Results .....	247



# Chapter 44. Adjusting Relevance Ranking and Indexing

## Metabib Class FTS Config Maps



These settings will apply to all libraries in your consortium. There is no way to apply these settings to only one library or branch.

- **Field Class** - Reference to a field defined in Administration > Server Administration > MARC Search/Facet Classes.
- **Text Search Config** - Which Text Search config to use
- **Active** - Check this checkbox to use this configuration for searching and indexing.
- **Index Weight** - The FTS index weight to use for this FTS config. Should be A, B, C, or D, defaults to C. You can see the exact numeric values for A, B, C, and D in Administration > Server Administration > MARC Search/Facet Classes.
- **Index Language** - An optional 3-letter code representing the language the record should be set to in order for this FTS config to be used for indexing. should be set to in order for this FTS config to be used for indexing
- **Search Language** - An optional 3-letter code representing what preferred language search should be selected by the end-user in order for this FTS config to be applied to their search.
- **Always Use** - Check this checkbox to override the configuration for a more specific field. For example, if you check this box when entering a setting for the author metabib class, it will override any settings you have made for the author|personal field in the Administration > Server Administration > Metabib Field FTS Config Maps screen.

## Metabib Field FTS Config Maps



These settings will apply to all libraries in your consortium. There is no way to apply these settings to only one library or branch.

- **Metabib Field** - Reference to a field defined in Administration > Server Administration > MARC Search/Facet Fields.
- **Text Search Config** - Which Text Search config to use
- **Active** - Check this checkbox to use this configuration for searching and indexing.

- Index Weight - The FTS index weight to use for this FTS config. Should be A, B, C, or D, defaults to C. You can see the exact numeric values for A, B, C, and D in Administration > Server Administration > MARC Search/Facet Classes.
- Index Language - An optional 3-letter code representing the language the record should be set to in order for this FTS config to be used for indexing. should be set to in order for this FTS config to be used for indexing
- Search Language - An optional 3-letter code representing what preferred language search should be selected by the end-user in order for this FTS config to be applied to their search.

# Chapter 45. Statistical Popularity Badges

Statistical Popularity Badges allow libraries to set popularity parameters that define popularity badges, which bibliographic records can earn if they meet the set criteria. Popularity badges can be based on factors such as circulation and hold activity, bibliographic record age, or material type. The popularity badges that a record earns are used to adjust catalog search results to display more popular titles (as defined by the badges) first. Within the OPAC there are two new sort options called "Most Popular" and "Popularity Adjusted Relevance" which will allow users to sort records based on the popularity assigned by the popularity badges.

## Popularity Rating and Calculation

Popularity badge parameters define the criteria a bibliographic record must meet to earn the badge, as well as which bibliographic records are eligible to earn the badge. For example, the popularity parameter "Circulations Over Time" can be configured to create a badge that is applied to bibliographic records for DVDs. The badge can be configured to look at circulations within the last 2 years, but assign more weight or popularity to circulations from the last 6 months.

Multiple popularity badges may be applied to a bibliographic record. For each applicable popularity badge, the record will be rated on a scale of 1-5, where a 5 indicates the most popular. Evergreen will then assign an overall popularity rating to each bibliographic record by averaging all of the popularity badge points earned by the record. The popularity rating is stored with the record and will be used to rank the record within search results when the popularity badge is within the scope of the search. The popularity badges are recalculated on a regular and configurable basis by the cron job **badge\_score\_generator.pl**. Popularity badges can also be recalculated by an administrator directly on the server.

## Creating Popularity Badges

There are two main types of popularity badges: point-in-time popularity (PIT), which looks at the popularity of a record at a specific point in time—such as the number of current circulations or the number of open hold requests; and temporal popularity (TP), which looks at the popularity of a record over a period of time—such as the number of circulations in the past year or the number of hold requests placed in the last six months.

The following popularity badge parameters are available for configuration:

- Holds Filled Over Time (TP)
- Holds Requested Over Time (TP)
- Current Hold Count (PIT)
- Circulations Over Time (TP)
- Current Circulation Count (PIT)
- Out/Total Ratio (PIT)

- Holds/Total Ratio (PIT)
- Holds/Holdable Ratio (PIT)
- Percent of Time Circulating (Takes into account all circulations, not specific period of time)
- Bibliographic Record Age (days, newer is better) (TP)
- Publication Age (days, newer is better) (TP)
- On-line Bib has attributes (PIT)
- Bib has attributes and copies (PIT)
- Bib has attributes and copies or URIs (PIT)
- Bib has attributes (PIT)

To create a new Statistical Popularity Badge:

1. Go to Administration→Local Administration→Statistical Popularity Badges.
2. Click on Actions→Add badge.
3. Fill out the following fields as needed to create the badge:



only Name, Scope, Weight, Recalculation Interval, Importance Interval, and Discard Value Count are required

- **Name:** Library assigned name for badge. Each name must be unique. The name will show up in the OPAC record display. For example: Most Requested Holds for Books-Last 6 Months. Required field.
- **Description:** Further information to provide context to staff about the badge.
- **Scope:** Defines the owning organization unit of the badge. Badges will be applied to search result sorting when the Scope is equal to, or an ancestor, of the search location. For example, a branch specific search will include badges where the Scope is the branch, the system, and the consortium. A consortium level search, will include only badges where the Scope is set to the consortium. Item specific badges will apply only to records that have items owned at or below the Scope. Required field.
- **Weight:** Can be used to indicate that a particular badge is more important than the other badges that the record might earn. The weight value serves as a multiplier of the badge rating. Required field with a default value of 1.
- **Age Horizon:** Indicates the time frame during which events should be included for calculating the badge. For example, a popularity badge for Most Circulated Items in the Past Two Years would have an Age Horizon of 2 years. The Age Horizon should be entered as a number followed by day(s), month(s), year(s), such as 6 months or 2 years. Use with temporal popularity (TP) badges only.

- **Importance Horizon:** Used in conjunction with Age Horizon, this allows more recent events to be considered more important than older events. A value of zero means that all events included by the Age Horizon will be considered of equal importance. With an Age Horizon of 2 years, an Importance Horizon of 6 months means that events, such as checkouts, that occurred within the past 6 months will be considered more important than the circulations that occurred earlier within the Age Horizon.
- **Importance Interval:** Can be used to further divide up the timeframe defined by the Importance Horizon. For example, if the Importance Interval is 1 month, Evergreen will combine all of the events within that month for adjustment by the Importance Scale (see below). The Importance Interval should be entered as a number followed by 'day(s), week(s), month(s), year(s), such as 6 months or 2 years. Required field.
- **Importance Scale:** The Importance Scale can be used to assign additional importance to events that occurred within the most recent Importance Interval. For example, if the Importance Horizon is 6 months and the Importance Interval is 1 month, the Importance Scale can be set to 6 to indicate that events that happened within the last month will count 6 times, events that happened 2 months ago will count 5 times, etc. The Importance Scale should be entered as a number followed by day(s), week(s), month(s), year(s), such as 6 months or 2 years.
- **Percentile:** Can be used to assign a badge to only the records that score above a certain percentile. For example, it can be used indicate that you only want to assign the badge to records in the top 5% of results by setting the field to 95. To optimize the popularity badges, percentile should be set between 95-99 to assign a badge to the top 5%-1% of records.
- **Attribute Filter:** Can be used to assign a badge to records that contain a specific Record Attribute. Currently this field can be configured by running a report (see note below) to obtain the JSON data that identifies the Record Attribute. The JSON data from the report output can be copied and pasted into this field. A new interface for creating Composite Record Attributes will be implemented with future development of the web client.
  - To run a report to obtain JSON data for the Attribute Filter, use SVF Record Attribute Coded Value Map as the template Source. For Displayed Fields, add Code, ID, and/or Description from the Source; also display the Definition field from the Composite Definition linked table. This field will display the JSON data in the report output. Filter on the Definition from the Composite Definition linked table and set the Operator to Is not NULL.
- **Circ Mod Filter:** Apply the badge only to items with a specific circulation modifier. Applies only to item related badges as opposed to "bib record age" badges, for example.
- **Bib Source Filter:** Apply the badge only to bibliographic records with a specific source.
- **Location Group Filter:** Apply the badge only to items that are part of the specified Shelving Location Group. Applies only to item related badges.
- **Recalculation Interval:** Indicates how often the popularity value of the badge should be recalculated for bibliographic records that have earned the badge. Recalculation is controlled by the cron job **badge\_score\_generator.pl**. Required field with a default value of 1 month.

- **Fixed Rating:** Can be used to set a fixed popularity value for all records that earn the badge. For example, the Fixed Rating can be set to 5 to indicate that records earning the badge should always be considered extremely popular.
- **Discard Value Count:** Can be used to prevent certain records from earning the badge to make Percentile more accurate by discarding titles that are below the value indicated. For example, if the badge looks at the circulation count over the past 6 months, Discard Value Count can be used to eliminate records that had too few circulations to be considered "popular". If you want to discard records that only had 1-3 circulations over the past 6 months, the Discard Value Count can be set to 3. Required field with a default value of 0.
- **Last Refresh Time:** Displays the last time the badge was recalculated based on the Recalculation Interval.
- **Popularity Parameter:** Types of TP and PIT factors described above that can be used to create badges to assign popularity to bibliographic records.

4. Click OK to save the badge.

## New Global Flags

**OPAC Default Sort:** can be used to set a default sort option for the catalog. Users can always override the default by manually selecting a different sort option while searching.

**Maximum Popularity Importance Multiplier:** used with the Popularity Adjusted Relevance sort option in the OPAC. Provides a scaled adjustment to relevance score based on the popularity rating earned by bibliographic records. See below for more information on how this flag is used.

## Sorting by Popularity in the OPAC

Within the stock OPAC template there is a new option for sorting search results called "Most Popular". Selecting "Most Popular" will first sort the search results based on the popularity rating determined by the popularity badges and will then apply the default "Sort by Relevance". This option will maximize the popularity badges and ensure that the most popular titles appear higher up in the search results.

There is a second new sort option called "Popularity Adjusted Relevance", which can be used to find a balance between popularity and relevance in search results. For example, it can help ensure that records that are popular, but not necessarily relevant to the search, do not supersede records that are both popular and relevant in the search results. It does this by sorting search results using an adjusted version of Relevance sorting. When sorting by relevance, each bibliographic record is assigned a baseline relevance score between 0 and 1, with 0 being not relevant to the search query and 1 being a perfect match. With "Popularity Adjusted Relevance" the baseline relevance is adjusted by a scaled version of the popularity rating assigned to the bibliographic record. The scaled adjustment is controlled by a Global Flag called "Maximum Popularity Importance Multiplier" (MPIM). The MPIM takes the average popularity rating of a bibliographic record (1-5) and creates a scaled adjustment that is applied to the baseline relevance for the record. The adjustment can be between

1.0 and the value set for the MPIM. For example, if the MPIM is set to 1.2, a record with an average popularity badge score of 5 (maximum popularity) would have its relevance multiplied by 1.2—in effect giving it the maximum increase of 20% in relevance. If a record has an average popularity badge score of 2.5, the baseline relevance of the record would be multiplied by 1.1 (due to the popularity score scaling the adjustment to half way between 1.0 and the MPIM of 1.2) and the record would receive a 10% increase in relevance. A record with a popularity badge score of 0 would be multiplied by 1.0 (due to the popularity score being 0) and would not receive a boost in relevance.

## Popularity Badge Example

A popularity badge called "Long Term Holds Requested" has been created which has the following parameters:

Popularity Parameter: Holds Requested Over Time Scope: CONS Weight: 1 (default) Age Horizon: 5 years Percentile: 99 Recalculation Interval: 1 month (default) Discard Value Count: 0 (default)

This popularity badge will rate bibliographic records based on the number of holds that have been placed on it over the past 5 years and will only apply the badge to the top 1% of records (99th percentile).

If a keyword search for harry potter is conducted and the sort option "Most Popular" is selected, Evergreen will apply the popularity rankings earned from badges to the search results.

The screenshot displays the Evergreen search interface. At the top, there are three tabs: "Advanced Search", "Numeric Search", and "Expert Search". Below these is the "Search Input" section, which contains three rows of search criteria. The second row is highlighted with a red box and contains the criteria: "And", "Title", "Contains", and "harry potter". Below the search input are buttons for "Search" and "Clear Form".

The "Search Filters" section is located below the search input. It contains several filter categories, each with a list of options and a vertical scrollbar. The categories are: "Item Type" (Art, Pictures, Images; Audiobooks and Playaway; Books; Books (Manuscripts)), "Item Form" (Braille; Direct electronic; Electronic; Large print), "Language" (Albanian; Arabic; Chinese; English), "Audience" (Adolescent; Adult; General; Juvenile), "Video Format" (8 mm.; Beta; Betacam; Betacam SP), "Bib Level" (empty), and "Literary Form" (Comic strips; Dramas; Essays; Fiction (not further specific)).

At the bottom of the search filters, there are three dropdown menus: "Search Library" (All C/W MARS Libraries), "Publication Year" (Is), and "Sort Results" (Most Popular). The "Sort Results" dropdown is highlighted with a red box.

Title search: harry potter. Sort by: Most Popular.

Search the Catalog   [Advanced Search](#)   [Browse the Catalog](#)

Search:  Type:  Format:  Library:

[Refine My Original Search](#)

Sort by:   ☐ Limit to available items

☐ Group Formats and Editions


**Search Results** Results 1 - 10 of about 442 (page 1 of 45) [1](#) [2](#) [3](#) [4](#) [5](#) [6](#) [7](#) [8](#) [Next](#)

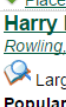
Personal Author	More
<a href="#">Rowling, J. K.</a> (191)	
<a href="#">Williams, John 1932-</a> (7)	
<a href="#">Colbert, David</a> (5)	
<a href="#">Granger, John 1961-</a> (5)	
<a href="#">Shapiro, Marc 1949-</a> (5)	


Corporate Author
<a href="#">Harry and the Potters (Musical group)</a> (2)


Topic Subject	More
<a href="#">Wizards</a> (256)	
<a href="#">Magic</a> (250)	
<a href="#">Potter, Harry (Fictitious character)</a> (239)	
<a href="#">Schools</a> (175)	
<a href="#">Hogwarts School of Witchcraft and Wizardry (Imaginary place)</a> (124)	


Series Title	More
<a href="#">Harry Potter</a> (3)	
<a href="#">Harry Potter : 5</a> (3)	
<a href="#">Year ... at Hogwarts : 7</a> (3)	
<a href="#">Coleção Estrela do mar :</a> (2)	

- 

**Harry Potter and the goblet of fire**  
Rowling, J. K.  
Large Print Book (2000.)  
**Popularity:** 5.0 / 5.0  
**Call number:** LP ROW  
7 of 9 copies available at All C/W MARS Libraries.  
[Place Hold](#) [Add to my list](#) [Reviews & More](#)
- 

**Harry Potter and the Half-Blood Prince**  
Rowling, J. K.  
Large Print Book (2005.)  
**Popularity:** 5.0 / 5.0  
**Call number:** J FICTION ROW  
10 of 10 copies available at All C/W MARS Libraries.  
[Place Hold](#) [Add to my list](#) [Reviews & More](#)
- 

**Harry Potter and the chamber of secrets**  
Rowling, J. K.  
Large Print Book (2003.)  
**Popularity:** 5.0 / 5.0  
**Call number:** LARGE PRINT FANTASY ROWLING  
1 of 3 copies available at All C/W MARS Libraries.  
[Place Hold](#) [Add to my list](#) [Reviews & More](#)
- 

**Harry Potter and the prisoner of Azkaban**  
Rowling, J. K.  
Large Print Book (2000.)  
**Popularity:** 5.0 / 5.0  
**Call number:** LP ROW  
14 of 19 copies available at All C/W MARS Libraries.  
[Place Hold](#) [Add to my list](#) [Reviews & More](#)
- 

**Harry Potter and the chamber of secrets**  
Rowling, J. K.

The popularity badge also appears in the bibliographic record display in the catalog. The name of the badge earned by the record and the popularity rating are displayed in the Record Details.

A popularity badge of 5.0/5.0 has been applied to the most popular bibliographic records where the search term "harry potter" is found in the title. In the image above, the popularity badge has identified records from the Harry Potter series by J.K. Rowling as the most popular titles matching the search and has listed them first in the search results.



## Current holds

4 current holds with 310 total copies.

Location	Call Number / Copy Notes	Barcode	Shelving Location	Age Hold Protection	Active/Create Date	Holdable?	Status
<a href="#">Adams Free Library</a>	J FIC Rowling ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	37431000796627 <a href="#">view</a>   <a href="#">edit</a>	Juvenile	None	02/08/2013	<a href="#">Copy hold</a> / <a href="#">Volume hold</a>	Avail
<a href="#">Adams Free Library</a>	J FIC Rowling ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	37431000911754 <a href="#">view</a>   <a href="#">edit</a>	Juvenile	None	02/08/2013	<a href="#">Copy hold</a>	Avail

## Record details

- **ISBN:** 0590353403 (hardcover) :
- **ISBN:** 9780590353403 (hardcover)
- **Physical Description:** vi, 312 p. : ill. ; 24 cm.
- **Edition:** 1st American ed.
- **Publisher:** New York : A.A. Levine Books, 1998.
- **Badges:**
  - Long term holds requested: 5

## Content descriptions

**General Note:** "Year 1"--Spine.  
Sequel: Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets.

**Summary, etc.:** Rescued from the outrageous neglect of his aunt and uncle, a young boy with a great destiny proves his worth while attending Hogwarts School for Witchcraft and Wizardry.

# Chapter 46. Multilingual Search in Evergreen

It is now possible to search for items that contain multiple languages in the Evergreen catalog. This will help facilitate searching for bilingual and multilingual materials, including specific translations, alternative languages, and to exclude specific translations from a search.

To identify the language of materials, Evergreen looks at two different fields in the MARC bibliographic record:

- 008/35-37: the language code located in characters 35-37 of the 008 tag
- 041\$abdefgm: the 041 tag, subfields \$abdefgm, which contain additional language codes

Multilingual searches can be conducted by constructing searches using specific language codes as a filter. To search using specific language codes, use the Record Attribute Definition name `item_lang` followed by the appropriate MARC Code for Languages. For example, `item_lang(spa)` will search only for Spanish language materials.

The language filter can be appended to any search. For example, a title search for `pippi longstocking item_lang(eng,swe)` will search for English or Swedish language publications of the title.

## Search Syntax

To search for materials that contain multiple languages (Boolean AND), the search filters can be constructed in the following ways:

1. Implicit Boolean filtering: `item_lang(eng) item_lang(spa)`
  - a. Evergreen assumes a Boolean AND between the search filters
2. Explicit Boolean filtering: `item_lang(eng) && item_lang(spa)`
  - a. The double ampersands (&&) explicitly tell Evergreen to apply a Boolean AND to the search filters

To search for materials that contain at least one of the searched languages (Boolean OR), the search filters can be constructed in the following ways:

1. List filtering: `item_lang(eng,spa)`
  - a. Listing the language codes, separated by a comma, within the search filter, tells Evergreen to apply a Boolean OR to the search filters
2. Explicit Boolean filtering: `item_lang(eng) || item_lang(spa)`
  - a. The double pipes (||) explicitly tell Evergreen to apply a Boolean OR to the search filters

To search for materials that contain a specific language and exclude another language from the search results (Boolean NOT), the search filters can be constructed as follows:

1. Boolean filtering: `item_lang(esp) -item_lang(eng)`

- a. The dash (-) explicitly tells Evergreen to apply a Boolean NOT to the english language search filter. Evergreen assumes a Boolean AND between the search filters.

To exclude multiple languages from search results (Boolean NOT), the search filters can be constructed as follows:

1. Boolean filtering: `-item_lang(eng) -item_lang(esp)`

- a. The dash (-) explicitly tells Evergreen to apply a Boolean NOT to both search filters. Evergreen assumes a Boolean AND between the search filters.

To conduct a search for materials that do not contain at least one of the languages searched (Boolean “NOT” and “OR”), the search filters can be constructed in the following ways:

1. List filtering: `-item_lang(eng,esp)`

- a. Explicit Boolean filtering: `-item_lang(eng) || -item_lang(esp)`

## Advanced Search

Within the Advanced Search interface, multiple languages can be selected from the Language filter by holding down the Ctrl key on the keyboard and selecting the desired languages. This will apply a Boolean OR operator to the language filters.

## Adding Subfields to the Index

Additional subfields for the 041 tag, such as h, j, k, and n, can be added to the index through the Record Attribute Definitions interface. Any records containing the additional subfields will need to be reingested into the database after making changes to the Record Attribute Definition.

1. Go to Administration>Server Administration>Record Attribute Definitions.
2. Click Next to locate the `item_lang` record attribute definition.
3. To edit the definition, double click on the `item_lang` row and the configuration window will appear.
4. In the MARC Subfields field, add the subfields you want included in the index.
5. Click Save.

# Chapter 47. Infrastructure Changes to Authority Browse

As part of a larger development and consulting project to improve how authority records are used in public catalog browse, improvements have been made to how authority records are indexed in Evergreen. This will not result in any direct changes to the public catalog, but will create infrastructure for improvements to the browse list. Specifically, a configuration table will be used to specify how browse entries from authority records should be generated. This new tables will supplement the existing authority control set configuration tables but will not replace them.

## Backend functionality

The new configuration table, `authority.heading_field`, specifies how headings can be extracted from MARC21 authority records. The general mechanism is similar to how `config.metabib_field` specifies how bibliographic records should be indexed: the XML representation of the MARC21 authority record is first passed through a stylesheet specified by the `authority.heading_field` definition, then XPath expressions are used to extract the heading for generating browse entries for the `authority.simple_heading` and `metabib.browse_entry` tables.

The initial set of definitions supplied for `authority.heading_field` use the MARCXML to MADS 2.1 stylesheet; this helps ensure that heading strings extracted from authority records will match headings extracted from bibliographic records using the MODS stylesheet.

## Staff User Interface

An interface for configuring authority headings is available in Server Administration in the web-based staff client, under the name "Authority Headings Fields".

When navigated to, the interface looks like this:

Individual heading field definitions can be edited like this:

The available fields are:

- **Heading type:** this can be `personal_name`, `corporate_name`, `meeting_name`, `uniform_title`, `named_event`, `chronology_term`, `topical_term`, `geographic_name`, `genre_form_term`, or `medium_of_performance_term`.
- **Heading purpose:** this can be `main`, `related`, or `variant`, corresponding to authority record 1XX, 5XX, or 4XX fields respectively.
- **Heading field label:** Label for use by administrators
- **Heading XSLT Format:** This core

- **Heading XPath:** Main XPath expression for selecting a part of the authority record to extract a heading from.
- **Heading Component XPath:** XPath express for selecting parts of a heading string from the elements selected by Heading XPath.
- **Related/Variant Type XPath:** Expression used, for variant and related headings, for identifying the specific purpose of the heading (e.g., broader term, narrower term, etc.).
- **Thesaurus XPath:** Expression used for extracting the thesaurus that controls the heading
- **Thesaurus Override XPath:** Expression used for identifying the thesaurus that controls a related heading.
- **Joiner string:** String used to stitch together components of the heading into a single display string. If not set, " — " is used.

It should be noted that unless one has non-standard authority records, it is recommended that changes to the authority heading field definitions be minimized.

# Chapter 48. Virtual Index Definitions

Virtual index definitions can be configured in Evergreen to create customized search indexes that make use of data collected by other (real) index definitions. Real index definitions use an XPath expression to indicate the bibliographic data that should be included in the index. Virtual index definitions bring together data collected by other index definitions to create a new, virtual index. They can also use an XPath expression to collect data directly for an index, but they are not required to.

All index definitions can be modified by having other indexes map to them. For example, Genre could be added to the All Subjects field definition in the Subject index. This would allow users to search Genre as part of a Subject search.

## Keyword Virtual Index Definition

Evergreen now uses a virtual index definition for the Keyword index. This allows libraries to customize the keyword search index by specifying which fields are included in the keyword index, as well as how each field should be weighted for relevance ranking in search results. By default, the keyword index contains all of the search fields other than the keyword definition itself. Each field is assigned a weight of 1, with the exception of Title Proper, which is assigned a weight of 8. A match on the Title Proper within a keyword search will be given the higher weight and therefore a higher relevance ranking within search results.

1. To view the stock virtual index definition for keyword searches, go to Administration>Server Administration>MARC Search/Facet Fields and select the Keyword Search Class.
2. Locate the field labeled "All searchable fields". This is the general keyword index.
3. The weight of a field can be modified by selecting the field and going to Actions>Edit Record or right-clicking and selecting Edit Record.
  - a. The Metabib Field Virtual Map modal will appear. Increase the weight of the field and click Save.

## Configuring Virtual Index Definitions

1. To configure a virtual index definition, go to Administration>Server Administration>MARC Search/Facet Fields.
  - a. This interface now has a Search Class filter that allows users to easily select which search class they want to view.
2. Next, locate the field for which you want to create a virtual index definition and click Manage under the column labeled Data Suppliers.
  1. A new tab will open that contains the interface for configuring a virtual index definition. This interface can be used to map real index definitions for inclusion in the virtual index.

1. To create a mapping, click New Record. A modal called Metabib Field Virtual Map will appear.
2. Select the Real index definition and the Virtual index definition to which it should be mapped.
3. Assign a Weight to the mapping. This allows Evergreen to calculate the weight that should be applied to each field when searched using the virtual index.
  - a. The weight assigned to a field within a virtual index can be different than the weight assigned when searching that field directly. For example, the Title Proper field can have a weight of 2 when a user performs a Title search, but a weight of 5 when a user performs a Keyword search (using the virtual index). This can help move title matches on keyword searches higher up in the search results list.
4. Click Save.
5. Repeat steps 4-7 until all desired fields are mapped to the virtual index definition.

Note: A service restart is required after definitions and mapping are changed. Changes to weight only do not require a restart as they are calculated in real time.

## Search Term Highlighting in Search Results

Search terms are now highlighted on the main OPAC search results page, the bibliographic record detail page, and the metarecord grouped results page. This will help users discern why a certain record was included in the search result set, as well as its relevance to the search. Search terms will be highlighted in both real and virtual fields that were searched. Terms that were stemmed or normalized during searching will also be highlighted. Search term highlighting can be turned off within the OPAC by selecting the checkbox to "Disable Highlighting" in the search results interface.

A keyword search for "piano" returns a set of search results:

The search term is highlighted in the search results and indicates why the records were included in the search result set. In this example, the search results interface shows the first three records had matching terms in the title field.

Within the record detail page for "The five piano concertos", we can see the search term also matched on the General Note and Subject fields within the bibliographic record.

# **Part XI. Patron User Experience Administration**



# Table of Contents

<u>49. Introduction .....</u>	<u>250</u>
<u>50. SMS Text Messaging .....</u>	<u>251</u>
<u>Administrative Setup .....</u>	<u>251</u>
<u>Enable Text Messages .....</u>	<u>251</u>
<u>Authenticate Patrons .....</u>	<u>251</u>
<u>Configure SMS Carriers .....</u>	<u>252</u>
<u>Configure Text Message Templates .....</u>	<u>253</u>
<u>Receiving Holds Notices via Text Message .....</u>	<u>254</u>
<u>Sending Copy Details via Text Message .....</u>	<u>255</u>
<u>51. Library Information Pages .....</u>	<u>258</u>

# Chapter 49. Introduction

This section describes settings for the OPAC, including patron self-registration and other functionalities.

# Chapter 50. SMS Text Messaging

The SMS Text Messaging feature enables users to receive hold notices via text message. Users can opt-in to this hold notification as their default setting for all holds, or they can receive specific hold notifications via text message. Users can also send call numbers and item locations via text message.

## Administrative Setup

You cannot receive text messages from Evergreen by default. You must enable this feature to receive hold notices and item information from Evergreen via text message.

### Enable Text Messages

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.
2. Select the setting, Enable features that send SMS text messages.
3. Set the value to True, and click Update Setting.

The screenshot shows the 'Organization Unit Settings' interface. At the top, there's a button 'Open in New Window', a dropdown for 'Context Location' set to 'CONS', a search bar with 'sms', and a 'Filter' button. Below this are 'Export' and 'Import' links. A note states: '\* Indicates the setting is not inherited from the parent org unit at run time'. A table lists settings with columns for 'Edit', 'History', 'Group', 'Setting', and 'Context'. The second row, 'SMS Text Messages' with the setting 'Enable features that send SMS text messages.', is highlighted. An 'Edit Setting' dialog box is open over this row. The dialog has a title bar 'Edit Setting' and a close button. It contains the text: 'Enable features that send SMS text messages.' followed by a detailed description: 'Current features that use SMS include hold-ready-for-pickup notifications and a "Send Text" action for call numbers in the OPAC. If this setting is not enabled, the SMS options will not be offered to the user. Unless you are carefully silo-ing patrons and their use of the OPAC, the context org for this setting should be the top org in the org hierarchy, otherwise patrons can trample their user settings when jumping between orgs.' Below the text are two dropdown menus: 'Context' set to 'CONS' and 'Value' set to 'True'. At the bottom are 'Delete Setting' and 'Update Setting' buttons.

Edit	History	Group	Setting	Context
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	SMS Text Messages	Disable auth requirement for texting call numbers.	CONS
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	SMS Text Messages	Enable features that send SMS text messages.	CONS

**Edit Setting**

Enable features that send SMS text messages.

Current features that use SMS include hold-ready-for-pickup notifications and a "Send Text" action for call numbers in the OPAC. If this setting is not enabled, the SMS options will not be offered to the user. Unless you are carefully silo-ing patrons and their use of the OPAC, the context org for this setting should be the top org in the org hierarchy, otherwise patrons can trample their user settings when jumping between orgs.

Context: CONS

Value: True

[Delete Setting](#) [Update Setting](#)

### Authenticate Patrons

By default, you must be logged into your OPAC account to send a text message from Evergreen. However, if you turn on this setting, you can text message copy information without having to login to your OPAC account.

To disable the patron login requirement:

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.

2. Select the setting, Disable auth requirement for texting call numbers.
3. Set the value to True, and click Update Setting.

Open in New Window

**Organization Unit Settings** | Context Location: CONS | sms | Filter

Export Import

\* Indicates the setting is not inherited from the parent org unit at run time

Edit	History	Group	Setting	Context
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	SMS Text Messages	Disable auth requirement for texting call numbers.	CONS
<a href="#">Edit</a>	<a href="#">History</a>	SMS Text Messages	Enable features that send SMS text messages.	CONS

**Edit Setting**

Disable auth requirement for texting call numbers.

Disable authentication requirement for sending call number information via SMS from the OPAC.

Context: CONS

Value: True

Delete Setting Update Setting

## Configure SMS Carriers

A list of SMS carriers that can transmit text messages to users is available in the staff client. Library staff can edit this list, or add new carriers.

To add or edit SMS carriers:

1. Click Administration → Server Administration → SMS Carriers.
2. To add a new carrier, click the New Carrier button in the top right corner of the screen. To edit an existing carrier, double click in any white space in the carrier's row.

**SMS Carriers** New Carrier

[Back](#) [Next](#)

Region	Name	Email Gateway	Active
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	AT&T Enterprise Paging	\$number@page.att.net	True
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	AT&T Global Smart Messaging Suite	\$number@sms.smartmessagingsuite.com	True
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	AT&T MobilityWireless	\$number@txt.att.net	True
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	Alaska Communications	\$number@msg.acsalaska.com	True
<input type="checkbox"/> Canada	Aliant	\$number@sms.wirefree.informe.ca	True
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	Altel (Allied Wireless)	\$number@sms.altelwireless.com	True
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	Ameritech	\$number@paging.acswireless.com	True
<input type="checkbox"/> Canada	Bell Mobility & Solo Mobile	\$number@txt.bell.ca	True
<input type="checkbox"/> Canada	Bell Mobility & Solo Mobile (Alternate)	\$number@txt.bellmobility.ca	True
<input type="checkbox"/> USA	BellSouth	\$number@bellsouth.com	True

3. Enter a (geographical) Region.
4. Enter the carrier's Name.
5. Enter an Email Gateway. The SMS carrier can provide you with the content for this field. The \$number field is converted to the user's phone number when the text message is generated.

6. Check the Active box to use this SMS Carrier.

Region	Name	Email Gateway	Active
USA	AT&T Enterprise Paging	\$number@page.att.net	True
USA	AT&T Global Smart Messaging Suite	\$number@sms.smartmessagingsuite.com	True
USA	AT&T Mobility/Wireless		True
USA	Alaska Communications		True
Canada	Aliant		True
USA	Alltel (Allied Wireless)		True
USA	Ameritech		True
Canada	Bell Mobility & Solo Mobile		True
Canada	Bell Mobility & Solo Mobile (Alternat		True
USA	BellSouth		True
USA	Bluegrass Cellular		True
USA	Boost Mobile		True

## Configure Text Message Templates

Library staff control the content and format of text messages through the templates in Notifications/Action Triggers. Patrons cannot add free text to their text messages.

To configure the text of the SMS text message:

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Notifications/Action Triggers.
2. Create a new A/T and template, or use or modify an existing template. For example, a default template, "Hold Ready for Pickup SMS Notification," notifies users that the hold is ready for pickup.

### Trigger Event Definitions

[Back](#)
[Next](#)
[Filter](#)

✓	#	Owning Library	Name	Hook	Enabled	Processing Delay	Processing Delay Context Field	Processing Group Context Field	Reactor	Validator
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	CONS	<a href="#">3 Day Courtesy Notice by SMS</a>	checkout.red	False	-3 days	due_date	usr	SendSMS	CirclsOpen
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	CONS	<a href="#">Hold Ready for Pickup SMS Notification</a>	hold.available	True	00:30:00	shelf_time	sms_notify	SendSMS	HoldIsAvailab
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	CONS	<a href="#">SMS Call Number</a>	acn.format.sn	True	00:05:00			SendSMS	NOOP_True

Event Definitions
Hooks
Reactors
Validators

Trigger Event Definitions
N

Opt-in User Field
Retention Interval
Success Cleanup
CreateHoldNotification

```

[%- USE date -%]
[%- user = target.0.user -%]
From: [%- params.sender_email || default_sender %]
Date: [%- date.format(date.now, '%a, %d %b %Y %T -0000', gmt => 1) %]
To: [%- params.recipient_email ||
helpers.get_sms_gateway_email(target.0.sms_carrier,target.0.sms_notify) %]
Subject: [% target.size %] hold(s) ready
Auto-Submitted: auto-generated

[% FOR hold IN target %][%-
  bibxml = helpers.xml_doc( hold.current_copy.call_number.record.marc );
  title = "";
  FOR part IN bibxml.findnodes('//*[tag="245"]/*[@code="a"]');
    title = title _ part.textContent;
  END;
  author = bibxml.findnodes('//*[tag="100"]/*[@code="a"]').textContent;
%][% hold.usr.first_given_name %]:[% title %] @ [% hold.pickup_lib.name %]
[% END %]

```

Template

## Receiving Holds Notices via Text Message

You can receive notification that your hold is ready for pickup from a text message that is sent to your mobile phone.

1. Login to your account.

Log in to Your Account
Please enter the following information:

Library Card Number or Username
Please include leading zeros and no spaces.  
Example: 0026626051

PIN Number or Password
If this is your first time logging in, please enter the last 4 digits of your phone number.  
Example: 0926
☐ Stay logged in?

Log in
[Forgot your password?](#)

2. Search the catalog.
3. Retrieve a record, and click the Place Hold link.
4. Select the option to retrieve hold notification via text message.
5. Choose an SMS Carrier from the drop down menu. NOTE: You can enter your SMS carrier and phone number into your Account Preferences to skip steps five and six.

6. Enter a phone number.

7. Click Submit.

#### Place Hold

Complete transcriptions, cadenzas, and exercises, for solo piano / Johannes Brahms ; edited by Eusebius Mandyczewski.

Pickup location:

Notify when hold is ready for pickup?

- ☐ Yes, by Email  
☐ Yes, by Phone

Phone Number:

- ☒ Yes, by Text Messaging

Mobile carrier:  Note: carrier charges may apply  
Mobile number:  Hint: use the full 10 digits of your phone #, no spaces, no dashes

## Sending Copy Details via Text Message

You can search the catalog for an item, and, after retrieving results for the item, click a hyperlink to send the copy information in a text message.

1. Login to your account in the OPAC. NOTE: If you have disabled the setting that requires patron login, then you do not have to login to their accounts to send text messages. See [Administrative Setup](#) for more information.

### Log in to Your Account

Please enter the following information:

**Library Card Number or Username**  
Please include leading zeros and no spaces.  
Example: 0028628051

**PIN Number or Password**  
If this is your first time logging in, please enter  
the last 4 digits of your phone number.  
Example: 0928

☐ Stay logged in?

[Forgot your password?](#)

2. Search the catalog, and retrieve a title with copies.

3. Click the Text link next to the call number.

## Available copies

- 26 copies at Example Consortium.

## Current holds

1 current hold with 31 total copies.

Location	Call Number / Copy Notes	Barcode
<a href="#">Example Branch 1</a>	780 B92 ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	CONC40000628
<a href="#">Example Branch 1</a>	780 B92 ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	CONC41000628
<a href="#">Example Branch 1</a>	ML 2533 B34 C92 ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	CONC40000128
<a href="#">Example Branch 1</a>	ML 2533 B34 C92 ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	CONC41000128
<a href="#">Example Branch 1</a>	ML 2533 B34 C92 ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	CONC42000128
<a href="#">Example Branch 1</a>	ML 2533 B34 C92 ( <a href="#">Text</a> )	CONC43000128

4. The text of the SMS Text Message appears.

### Text call number

[Return to record](#)

From: evergreen@localhost  
To:  
Subject: Call Number  
  
Call Number: 780 B92  
Location: Stacks  
Library: Example Branch 1  
Title: Violin concerto  
Author: Penderecki, Krzysztof,

Mobile carrier:

Mobile number:  Hint: use the full 10 digits of your phone #, no spaces, no dashes

Note: carrier charges may apply

5. Choose an SMS Carrier from the drop down menu. NOTE: You can enter your SMS carrier and phone number into your Account Preferences to skip steps five and six.

6. Enter a phone number.

7. Click Submit. NOTE: Message and data rates may apply.

8. The number and carrier are converted to an email address, and the text message is sent to your mobile phone. The following confirmation message will appear.



Your message has been sent!

[Return to record](#)

From: evergreen@localhost  
To: 3525555555@msg.acsalaska.com  
Subject: Call Number

Call Number: 780 B92  
Location: Stacks  
Library: Example Branch 1  
Title: Violin concerto  
Author: Penderecki, Krzysztof,

Permissions to use this Feature

ADMIN\_SMS\_CARRIER - Enables users to add/create/delete SMS Carrier entries.

# Chapter 51. Library Information Pages

The branch name displayed in the copy details section of the search results page, the record summary page, and the kids catalog record summary page will link to a library information page. This page is located at **`http://hostname/eg/opac/library/<SHORTNAME>`** and at **`http://hostname/eg/opac/library/<ID>`**.

Evergreen automatically generates this page based on information entered in Administration → Server Administration → Organizational Units (actor.org\_unit).

The library information page displays:

- The name of the library
- Opening hours
- E-mail address
- Phone number
- Mailing address
- The branch's parent library system

An Evergreen site can also display a link to the library's web site on the information page.

To display a link:

1. Go to Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.
2. Edit the Library Information URL setting for the branch.



If you set the URL at the system level, that URL will be used as the link for the system and for all child branches that do not have its own URL set. . Enter the URL in the following format: <http://example.com/about.html>.

An Evergreen site may also opt to link directly from the copy details section of the catalog to the library web site, bypassing the automatically-generated library information page. To do so:

1. Add the library's URL to the Library Information URL setting as described above.
2. Go to Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.
3. Set the Use external "library information URL" in copy table, if available setting to true.

The library information pages publish schema.org structured data, as do parts of the OPAC bibliographic record views, which can enable search engines and other systems to better understand your libraries and their resources.

# **Part XII. Designing your catalog**

# Table of Contents

52. Introduction .....	262
53. Configuring and customizing the public interface .....	263
Locating the default template files .....	263
Mapping templates to URLs .....	263
How to override template files .....	264
Configuring the custom templates directory in Apache's eg.conf .....	264
Adjusting colors for your public interface .....	264
Adjusting fonts in your public interface .....	264
Media file locations in the public interface .....	265
Changing some text in the public interface .....	265
Adding translations to PO file .....	266
Adding and removing MARC fields from the record details display page .....	266
Using bibliographic source variables .....	267
54. Setting the default physical location for your library environment .....	268
55. Setting a default language and adding optional languages .....	269
Updating translations in Evergreen using current translations from Launchpad .....	269
56. Change Date Format in Patron Account View .....	271
57. Including External Content in Your Public Interface .....	272
OpenLibrary .....	272
ChiliFresh .....	272
Content Café .....	273
Obalkyknih.cz .....	273
Setting up Obalkyknih.cz account .....	273
Enabling Obalkyknih.cz in Evergreen .....	273
Google Analytics .....	274
NoveList .....	274
RefWorks .....	274
SFX OpenURL Resolver .....	275
Syndetic Solutions .....	275
Clear External/Added Content Cache .....	275
Configure a Custom Image for Missing Images .....	276
58. Including Locally Hosted Content in Your Public Interface .....	277
File Location and Format .....	277
Example .....	277
59. Adding Carousels to Your Public Catalog .....	279
CAROUSEL TYPES .....	279
Attributes of Carousel Types .....	280
Creating a Carousel Type .....	280
Editing a Carousel Type .....	280
Deleting a Carousel Type .....	281
CAROUSEL DEFINITIONS .....	281
Attributes of a Carousel Definition .....	281
Creating a Carousel from the Carousels Administration Page .....	282
Carousels and Record Buckets .....	283
View a Carousel Bucket from Record Buckets .....	283
Create a Carousel from a Record Bucket .....	283
Manually Adding Contents to a Carousel from Record Details Page .....	284
CAROUSEL LIBRARY MAPPING .....	284
Attributes of Carousel Library Mapping .....	285
Create a New Carousel Mapping .....	285
CAROUSELS - OTHER ADMINISTRATIVE FEATURES .....	285

<u>New Staff Permissions</u> .....	<u>285</u>
<u>New Database Tables</u> .....	<u>286</u>
<u>OPAC Templates</u> .....	<u>286</u>
<u>Accessibility Features</u> .....	<u>287</u>
<u>OpenSRF</u> .....	<u>287</u>
<u>Cron Job</u> .....	<u>287</u>

# Chapter 52. Introduction

When people want to find things in your Evergreen system, they will check the catalog. In Evergreen, the catalog is made available through a web interface, called the OPAC (Online Public Access Catalog). In the latest versions of the Evergreen system, the OPAC is built on a set of programming modules called the Template Toolkit. You will see the OPAC sometimes referred to as the TPAC.

In this chapter, we'll show you how to customize the OPAC, change it from its default configuration, and make it your own.

# Chapter 53. Configuring and customizing the public interface

The public interface is referred to as the TPAC or Template Toolkit (TT) within the Evergreen community. The template toolkit system allows you to customize the look and feel of your OPAC by editing the template pages (.tt2) files as well as the associated style sheets.

## Locating the default template files

The default URL for the TPAC on a default Evergreen system is `http://localhost/eg/opac/home` (adjust localhost to match your hostname or IP address).

The default template file is installed in `/openils/var/templates/opac`.

You should generally avoid touching the installed default template files, unless you are contributing changes for Evergreen to adopt as a new default. Even then, while you are developing your changes, consider using template overrides rather than touching the installed templates until you are ready to commit the changes to a branch. See below for information on template overrides.

## Mapping templates to URLs

The mapping for templates to URLs is straightforward. Following are a few examples, where `<templates>` is a placeholder for one or more directories that will be searched for a match:

- `http://localhost/eg/opac/home` ⇒ `/openils/var/<templates>/opac/home.tt2`
- `http://localhost/eg/opac/advanced` ⇒ `/openils/var/<templates>/opac/advanced.tt2`
- `http://localhost/eg/opac/results` ⇒ `/openils/var/<templates>/opac/results.tt2`

The template files themselves can process, be wrapped by, or include other template files. For example, the `home.tt2` template currently involves a number of other template files to generate a single HTML file.

Example Template Toolkit file: `opac/home.tt2`.

```
[% PROCESS "opac/parts/header.tt2";  
  WRAPPER "opac/parts/base.tt2";  
  INCLUDE "opac/parts/topnav.tt2";  
  ctx.page_title = l("Home") %]  
<div id="search-wrapper">  
  [% INCLUDE "opac/parts/searchbar.tt2" %]  
</div>  
<div id="content-wrapper">  
  <div id="main-content-home">  
    <div class="common-full-pad"></div>  
    [% INCLUDE "opac/parts/homesearch.tt2" %]  
    <div class="common-full-pad"></div>  
  </div>  
</div>  
[% END %]
```

Note that file references are relative to the top of the template directory.

# How to override template files

Overrides for template files or TPAC pages go in a directory that parallels the structure of the default templates directory. The overrides then get pulled in via the Apache configuration.

The following example demonstrates how to create a file that overrides the default "Advanced search page" (advanced.tt2) by adding a new templates\_custom directory and editing the new file in that directory.

```
bash$ mkdir -p /openils/var/templates_custom/opac
bash$ cp /openils/var/templates/opac/advanced.tt2 \
/openils/var/templates_custom/opac/.
bash$ vim /openils/var/templates_custom/opac/advanced.tt2
```

## Configuring the custom templates directory in Apache's eg.conf

You now need to teach Apache about the new custom template directory. Edit /etc/apache2/sites-available/eg.conf and add the following <Location /eg> element to each of the <VirtualHost> elements in which you want to include the overrides. The default Evergreen configuration includes a VirtualHost directive for port 80 (HTTP) and another one for port 443 (HTTPS); you probably want to edit both, unless you want the HTTP user experience to be different from the HTTPS user experience.

```
<VirtualHost *:80>
# <snip>

# - absorb the shared virtual host settings
Include eg_vhost.conf
<Location /eg>
    PerlAddVar OILSWebTemplatePath "/openils/var/templates_custom"
</Location>

# <snip>
</VirtualHost>
```

Finally, reload the Apache configuration to pick up the changes. You should now be able to see your change at <http://localhost/eg/opac/advanced> where localhost is the hostname of your Evergreen server.

## Adjusting colors for your public interface

You may adjust the colors of your public interface by editing the colors.tt2 file. The location of this file is in /openils/var/templates/opac/parts/css/colors.tt2. When you customize the colors of your public interface, remember to create a custom file in your custom template folder and edit the custom file and not the file located in your default template.

## Adjusting fonts in your public interface

Font sizes can be changed in the colors.tt2 file located in /openils/var/templates/opac/parts/css/. Again, create and edit a custom template version and not the file in the default template.



Other aspects of fonts such as the default font family can be adjusted in `/openils/var/templates/opac/css/style.css.tt2`.

## Media file locations in the public interface

The media files (mostly PNG images) used by the default TPAC templates are stored in the repository in `Open-ILS/web/images/` and installed in `/openils/var/web/images/`.

## Changing some text in the public interface

Out of the box, TPAC includes a number of placeholder text and links. For example, there is a set of links cleverly named Link 1, Link 2, and so on in the header and footer of every page in TPAC. Here is how to customize that for a custom templates skin.

To begin with, find the page(s) that contain the text in question. The simplest way to do that is with the `grep -s` command. In the following example, search for files that contain the text "Link 1":

```
bash$ grep -r "Link 1" /openils/var/templates/opac
/openils/var/templates/opac/parts/topnav_links.tt2
4:         <a href="http://example.com">[% l('Link 1') %]</a>
```

Next, copy the file into our overrides directory and edit it with vim.

Copying the links file into the overrides directory.

```
bash$ cp /openils/var/templates/opac/parts/topnav_links.tt2 \
/openils/var/templates_custom/opac/parts/topnav_links.tt2
bash$ vim /openils/var/templates_custom/opac/parts/topnav_links.tt2
```

Finally, edit the link text in `opac/parts/header.tt2`. Content of the `opac/parts/header.tt2` file.

```
<div id="gold-links-holder">
  <div id="gold-links">
    <div id="header-links">
      <a href="http://example.com">[% l('Link 1') %]</a>
      <a href="http://example.com">[% l('Link 2') %]</a>
      <a href="http://example.com">[% l('Link 3') %]</a>
      <a href="http://example.com">[% l('Link 4') %]</a>
      <a href="http://example.com">[% l('Link 5') %]</a>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

For the most part, the page looks like regular HTML, but note the `[%_(" ")%]` that surrounds the text of each link. The `[% ... %]` signifies a TT block, which can contain one or more TT processing instructions. `l(" ... ")`; is a function that marks text for localization (translation); a separate process can subsequently extract localized text as GNU gettext-formatted PO (Portable Object) files.

As Evergreen supports multiple languages, any customization to Evergreen's default text must use the localization function. Also, note that the localization function supports placeholders such as `[_1]`, `[_2]` in the text; these are replaced by the contents of variables passed as extra arguments to the `l()` function.

Once the link and link text has been edited to your satisfaction, load the page in a Web browser and see the live changes immediately.

# Adding translations to PO file

After you have added custom text in translatable form to a TT2 template, you need to add the custom strings and its translations to the PO file containing the translations. Evergreen PO files are stored in `/openils/var/template/data/locale/`

The PO file consists of pairs of the text extracted from the code: Message ID denoted as `msgid` and message string denoted as `msgstr`. When adding the custom string to PO file:

- The line with English expressions must start with `msgid`. The English term must be enclosed in double apostrophes.
- The line with translation start with `/msgstr/`. The translation to local language must be and enclosed in enclosed in double apostrophes.
- It is recommended to add a note in which template and on which line the particular string is located. The lines with notes must be marked as comments i.e., start with number sign (`#`)

Example:

```
# -----  
# The lines below contains the custom strings manually added to the catalog  
# -----  
  
#: ../../Open-ILS/src/custom_templates/opac/parts/topnav_links.tt2:1  
msgid "Union Catalog of the Czech Republic"  
msgstr "Souborný katalog České republiky"  
  
#: ../../Open-ILS/src/custom_templates/opac/parts/topnav_links.tt2:1  
msgid "Uniform Information Gateway "  
msgstr "Jednotná informační brána"
```



It is good practice to save backup copy of the original PO file before changing it.

After making changes, restart Apache to make the changes take effect. As root run the command:

```
service apache2 restart
```

## Adding and removing MARC fields from the record details display page

It is possible to add and remove the MARC fields and subfields displayed in the record details page. In order to add MARC fields to be displayed on the details page of a record, you will need to map the MARC code to variables in the `/openils/var/templates/opac/parts/misc_util.tt2` file.

For example, to map the template variable `args.pubdates` to the date of publication MARC field 260, subfield c, add these lines to `misc_util.tt2`:

```
args.pubdates = [];
```

```
FOR sub IN xml.findnodes('//*[tag="260"]/*[code="c"]');
  args.pubdates.push(sub.textContent);
END;
args.pubdate = (args.pubdates.size) ? args.pubdates.0 : ''
```

You will then need to edit the `/openils/var/templates/opac/parts/record/summary.tt2` file in order to get the template variable for the MARC field to display.

For example, to display the date of publication code you created in the `misc_util.tt2` file, add these lines:

```
[% IF attrs.pubdate; %]
  <span itemprop="datePublished">[% attrs.pubdate | html; %]</span>
[% END; %]
```

You can add any MARC field to your record details page. Moreover, this approach can also be used to display MARC fields in other pages, such as your results page.

## Using bibliographic source variables

For bibliographic records, there is a "bib source" that can be associated with every record. This source and its ID are available as record attributes called `bib_source.source` and `bib_source.id`. These variables do not present themselves in the catalog display by default.

### Example use case

In this example, a library imports e-resource records from a third party and uses the bib source to indicate where the records came from. Patrons can place holds on these titles, but they must be placed via the vendor website, not in Evergreen. By exposing the bib source, the library can alter the Place Hold link for these records to point at the vendor website.

# Chapter 54. Setting the default physical location for your library environment

`physical_loc` is an Apache environment variable that sets the default physical location, used for setting search scopes and determining the order in which copies should be sorted. This variable is set in `/etc/apache2/sites-available/eg.conf`. The following example demonstrates the default physical location being set to library ID 104:

```
SetEnv physical_loc 104
```

# Chapter 55. Setting a default language and adding optional languages

OILSWebLocale adds support for a specific language. Add this variable to the Virtual Host section in /etc/apache2/eg\_vhost.conf.

OILSWebDefaultLocale specifies which locale to display when a user lands on a page in TPAC and has not chosen a different locale from the TPAC locale picker. The following example shows the fr\_ca locale being added to the locale picker and being set as the default locale:

```
PerlAddVar OILSWebLocale "fr_ca"  
PerlAddVar OILSWebLocale "/openils/var/data/locale/opac/fr-CA.po"  
PerlAddVar OILSWebDefaultLocale "fr-CA"
```

Below is a table of the currently supported languages packaged with Evergreen:

Language	Code	PO file
Arabic - Jordan	ar_jo	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/ar-JO.po
Armenian	hy_am	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/hy-AM.po
Czech	cs_cz	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/cs-CZ.po
English - Canada	en_ca	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/en-CA.po
English - Great Britain	en_gb	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/en-GB.po
*English - United States	en_us	not applicable
French - Canada	fr_ca	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/fr-CA.po
Portuguese - Brazil	pt_br	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/pt-BR.po
Spanish	es_es	/openils/var/data/locale/opac/es-ES.po

\*American English is built into Evergreen so you do not need to set up this language and there are no PO files.

## Updating translations in Evergreen using current translations from Launchpad

Due to Evergreen release workflow/schedule, some language strings may already have been translated in Launchpad, but are not yet packaged with Evergreen. In such cases, it is possible to manually replace the PO file in Evergreen with an up-to-date PO file downloaded from Launchpad.

1. Visit the Evergreen translation site in [Launchpad](#)

2. Select required language (e.g. Czech or Spanish)
3. Open the tpac template and then select option Download translation. Note: to be able to download the translation file you need to be logged in to Launchpad.
4. Select PO format and submit the request for download button. You can also request for download of all existing templates and languages at once, see <https://translations.launchpad.net/evergreen/master/+export>. The download link will be sent You to email address provided.
5. Download the file and name it according to the language used (e.g., cs-CZ.po for Czech or es-ES.po for Spanish)
6. Copy the downloaded file to /openils/var/template/data/locale. It is a good practice to backup the original PO file before.
7. Be sure that the desired language is set as default, using the [Default language](#) procedures.

Analogously, to update the web staff client translations, download the translation template webstaff and copy it to openils/var/template/data/locale/staff.

Changes require web server reload to take effect. As root run the command

```
service apache2 restart
```

# Chapter 56. Change Date Format in Patron Account View

Libraries with same-day circulations may want their patrons to be able to view the due time as well as due date when they log in to their OPAC account. To accomplish this, go to `opac/myopac/circs.tt2`. Find the line that reads:

```
[% date.format(due_date, DATE_FORMAT) %]
```

Replace it with:

```
[% date.format(due_date, '%D %I:%M %p') %]
```

# Chapter 57. Including External Content in Your Public Interface

The public interface allows you to include external services and content in your public interface. These can include book cover images, user reviews, table of contents, summaries, author notes, annotations, user suggestions, series information among other services. Some of these services are free while others require a subscription.

The following are some of the external content services which you can configure in Evergreen.

## OpenLibrary

The default install of Evergreen includes OpenLibrary book covers. The settings for this are controlled by the `<added_content>` section of `/openils/conf/opensrf.xml`. Here are the key elements of this configuration:

```
<module>OpenILS::WWW::AddedContent::OpenLibrary</module>
```

This section calls the OpenLibrary perl module. If you wish to link to a different book cover service other than OpenLibrary, you must refer to the location of the corresponding Perl module. You will also need to change other settings accordingly.

```
<timeout>1</timeout>
```

Max number of seconds to wait for an added content request to return data. Data not returned within the timeout is considered a failure.

```
<retry_timeout>600</retry_timeout>
```

This setting is the amount of time to wait before we try again.

```
<max_errors>15</max_errors>
```

Maximum number of consecutive lookup errors a given process can have before added content lookups are disabled for everyone. To adjust the size of the cover image on the record details page edit the `config.tt2` file and change the value of the `record.summary.jacket_size`. The default value is "medium" and the available options are "small", "medium" and "large."

## ChiliFresh

ChiliFresh is a subscription-based service which allows book covers, reviews and social interaction of patrons to appear in your catalog. To activate ChiliFresh, you will need to open the Apache configuration file `/etc/apache2/eg_vhost.conf` and edit several lines:

1. Uncomment (remove the `"#"` at the beginning of the line) and add your ChiliFresh account number:

```
#SetEnv OILS_CHILIFRESH_ACCOUNT
```

1. Uncomment this line and add your ChiliFresh Profile:



```
#SetEnv OILS_CHILIFRESH_PROFILE
```

Uncomment the line indicating the location of the Evergreen JavaScript for ChiliFresh:

```
#SetEnv OILS_CHILIFRESH_URL http://chilifresh.com/on-site /js/evergreen.js
```

1. Uncomment the line indicating the secure URL for the Evergreen JavaScript :

```
#SetEnv OILS_CHILIFRESH_HTTPS_URL https://secure.chilifresh.com/on-site/js/evergreen.js
```

## Content Café

Content Café is a subscription-based service that can add jacket images, reviews, summaries, tables of contents and book details to your records.

In order to activate Content Café, edit the `/openils/conf/opensrf.xml` file and change the `<module>` element to point to the ContentCafe Perl Module:

```
<module>OpenILS::WWW::AddedContent::ContentCafe</module>
```

To adjust settings for Content Café, edit a couple of fields with the `<ContentCafe>` Section of `/openils/conf/opensrf.xml`.

Edit the `userid` and `password` elements to match the user id and password for your Content Café account.

This provider retrieves content based on ISBN or UPC, with a default preference for ISBNs. If you wish for UPCs to be preferred, or wish one of the two identifier types to not be considered at all, you can change the "identifier\_order" option in `opensrf.xml`. When the option is present, only the identifier(s) listed will be sent.

## Obalkyknih.cz

### Setting up Obalkyknih.cz account

If your library wishes to use added content provided by Obalkyknih.cz, a service based in the Czech Republic, you have to [create an Obalkyknih.cz account](#). Please note that the interface is only available in Czech. After logging in your Obalkyknih.cz account, you have to add your IP address and Evergreen server address to your account settings. (In case each library uses an address of its own, all of these addresses have to be added.)

### Enabling Obalkyknih.cz in Evergreen

Set `obalkyknih_cz.enabled` to `true` in `/openils/var/templates/opac/parts/config.tt2`:

```
obalkyknih_cz.enabled = 'true';
```

Enable added content from Obalkyknih.cz in `/openils/conf/opensrf.xml` configuration file (and – at the same time – disable added content from Open Library, i.e., Evergreen's default added content provider):

```
<!-- <module>OpenILS::WWW::AddedContent::OpenLibrary</module> -->
<module>OpenILS::WWW::AddedContent::ObalkyKnih</module>
```

Using default settings for Obalkyknih.cz means all types of added content from Obalkyknih.cz are visible in your online catalog. If the module is enabled, book covers are always displayed. Other types of added content (summaries, ratings or tables of contents) can be:

- switched off using false option,
- switched on again using true option.

The following types of added content are used:

- summary (or annotation)
- tocPDF (table of contents available as image)
- tocText (table of contents available as text)
- review (user reviews)

An example of how to switch off summaries:

```
<summary>false</summary>
```

## Google Analytics

Google Analytics is a free service to collect statistics for your Evergreen site. Statistic tracking is disabled by default through the Evergreen client software when library staff use your site within the client, but active when anyone uses the site without the client. This was a preventive measure to reduce the potential risks for leaking patron information. In order to use Google Analytics you will first need to set up the service from the Google Analytics website at <http://www.google.com/analytics/>. To activate Google Analytics you will need to edit config.tt2 in your template. To enable the service set the value of google\_analytics.enabled to true and change the value of google\_analytics.code to be the code in your Google Analytics account.

## Novelist

Novelist is a subscription-based service providing reviews and recommendation for books in you catalog. To activate your Novelist service in Evergreen, open the Apache configuration file /etc/apache2/eg\_vhost.conf and edit the line:

```
#SetEnv OILS_NOVELIST_URL
```

You should use the URL provided by NoveList.

## RefWorks

RefWorks is a subscription-based online bibliographic management tool. If you have a RefWorks subscription, you can activate RefWorks in Evergreen by editing the config.tt2 file located in your

template directory. You will need to set the `ctx.refworks.enabled` value to `true`. You may also set the RefWorks URL by changing the `ctx.refworks.url` setting on the same file.

## SFX OpenURL Resolver

An OpenURL resolver allows you to find electronic resources and pull them into your catalog based on the ISBN or ISSN of the item. In order to use the SFX OpenURL resolver, you will need to subscribe to the Ex Libris SFX service. To activate the service in Evergreen edit the `config.tt2` file in your template. Enable the resolver by changing the value of `openurl.enabled` to `true` and change the `openurl.baseurl` setting to point to the URL of your OpenURL resolver.

## Syndetic Solutions

Syndetic Solutions is a subscription service providing book covers and other data for items in your catalog. In order to activate Syndetic, edit the `/openils/conf/opensrf.xml` file and change the `<module>` element to point to the Syndetic Perl Module:

```
<module>OpenILS::WWW::AddedContent::Syndetic</module>
```

You will also need to edit the `<userid>` element to be the user id provided to you by Syndetic.

Then, you will need to uncomment and edit the `<base_url>` element so that it points to the Syndetic service:

```
<base_url>http://syndetics.com/index.aspx</base_url>
```

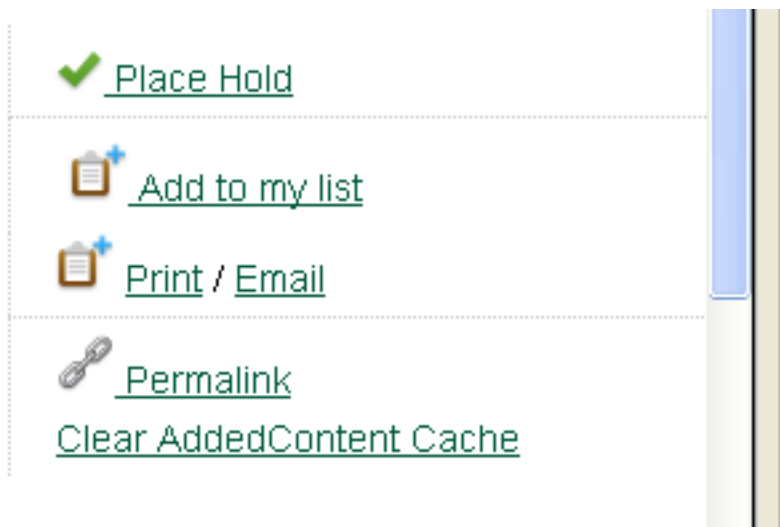
For changes to be activated for your public interface you will need to restart Evergreen and Apache.

The Syndetic Solutions provider retrieves images based on the following identifiers found in bibliographic records:

- ISBN
- UPC
- ISSN

## Clear External/Added Content Cache

On the catalog's record summary page, there is a link for staff that will forcibly clear the cache of the Added Content for that record. This is helpful for when the Added Content retrieved the wrong cover jacket art, summary, etc. and caches the wrong result.



Once clicked, there is a pop up that will display what was cleared from the cache.



You will need to reload the record in the staff client to obtain the new images from your Added Content Supplier.

## Configure a Custom Image for Missing Images

You can configure a "no image" image other than the standard 1-pixel blank image. The example eg\_vhost.conf file provides examples in the comments. Note: Evergreen does not provide default images for these.

# Chapter 58. Including Locally Hosted Content in Your Public Interface

It is also possible to show added content that has been generated locally by placing the content in a specific spot on the web server. It is possible to have local book jackets, reviews, TOC, excerpts or annotations.

## File Location and Format

By default the files will need to be placed in directories under `/openils/var/web/opac/extras/ac/` on the server(s) that run Apache.

The files need to be in specific folders depending on the format of the added content. Local Content can only be looked up based on the record ID at this time.

URL Format: `http://catalog/opac/extras/ac/{type}/{format}/r/{recordid}`

- type is one of jacket, reviews, toc, excerpt or anotes.
- format is type dependent:
  - for jacket, one of small, medium or large
  - others, one of html, xml or json ... html is the default for non-image added content
- recordid is the bibliographic record id (bre.id).

## Example

If you have some equipment that you are circulating such as a laptop or eBook reader and you want to add an image of the equipment that will show up in the catalog.



If you are adding jacket art for a traditional type of media (book, CD, DVD) consider adding the jacket art to the <http://openlibrary.org> project instead of hosting it locally. This would allow other libraries to benefit from your work.

Make note of the Record ID of the bib record. You can find this by looking at the URL of the bib in the catalog. <http://catalog/eg/opac/record/123>, 123 is the record ID. These images will only show up for one specific record.

Create 3 different sized versions of the image in png or jpg format.

- Small - 80px x 80px - named 123-s.jpg or 123-s.png - This is displayed in the browse display.
- Medium - 240px x 240px - named 123-m.jpg or 123-m.png - This is displayed on the summary page.

- Large - 400px x 399px - named 123-l.jpg or 123-l.png - This is displayed if the summary page image is clicked on.



The image dimensions are up to you, use what looks good in your catalog.

Next, upload the images to the evergreen server(s) that run apache, and move/rename the files to the following locations/name. You will need to create directories that are missing.

- Small - Move the file 123-s.jpg to /openils/var/web/opac/extras/ac/jacket/small/r/123
- Medium - Move the file 123-m.jpg to /openils/var/web/opac/extras/ac/jacket/medium/r/123.
- Large - Move the file 123-l.jpg to /openils/var/web/opac/extras/ac/jacket/large/r/123.



The system doesn't need the file extension to know what kind of file it is.

Reload the bib record summary in the web catalog and your new image will display.

# Chapter 59. Adding Carousels to Your Public Catalog

This feature fully integrates the creation and management of book carousels into Evergreen, allowing for the display of book cover images on a library's public catalog home page. Carousels may be animated or static. They can be manually maintained by staff or automatically maintained by Evergreen. Titles can appear in carousels based on newly cataloged items, recent returns, popularity, etc. Titles must have copies that are visible to the public catalog, be circulating, and holdable to appear in a carousel. Serial titles cannot be displayed in carousels.

There are three administrative interfaces used to create and manage carousels and their components:

- [Carousel Types](#) - used to define different types of carousels
- [Carousels](#) - used to create and manage specific carousel definitions
- [Carousel Library Mapping](#) - used to manage which libraries will display specific carousels, as well as the default display order on a library's public catalog home page

Each of these interfaces are detailed below.

## CAROUSEL TYPES

The Carousel Types administrative interface is used to create, edit, or delete carousel types. Carousel Types define the attributes of a carousel, such as whether it is automatically managed and how it is filtered. A carousel must be associated with a carousel type to function properly.

There are five stock Carousel Types:

- Newly Cataloged Items - titles appear automatically based on the active date of the title's copies
- Recently Returned Items - titles appear automatically based on the mostly recently circulated copy's check-in scan date and time
- Top Circulated Titles - titles appear automatically based on the most circulated copies in the Item Libraries identified in the carousel definition; titles are chosen based on the number of action.circulation rows created during an interval specified in the carousel definition and includes both circulations and renewals
- Newest Items by Shelving Location - titles appear automatically based on the active date and shelving location of the title's copies
- Manual - titles are added and managed manually by library staff

Additional types can be created in the Carousel Types Interface. Types can also be modified or deleted. Access the interface by going to Administration > Server Administration > Carousel Types.

The interface displays the list of carousel types in a grid format. The grid displays the Carousel Type ID, name of the carousel type, and the characteristics of each type by default. The Actions Menu is used to edit or delete a carousel type.

## Attributes of Carousel Types

Each Carousel Type defines attributes used to add titles to the carousels associated with the type. Filters apply only to automatically managed carousels.

- Automatically Managed - when set to true, Evergreen uses a cron job to add titles to a carousel automatically based on a set of criteria established in the carousel definition. When set to false, library staff must enter the contents of a carousel manually.
- Filter by Age - when set to true, the type includes or excludes titles based on the age of their attached items
- Filter by Item Owning Library - when set to true, the type includes or excludes titles based the owning organizational unit of their attached items
- Filter by Item Location - when set to true, the type includes or excludes titles based on the shelving locations of their attached items

## Creating a Carousel Type

1. Go to Administration > Server Administration > Carousel Types
2. Select the New Carousel Type button
3. Enter a name for the carousel type
4. Use the checkboxes to apply filtering characteristics to the carousel type; filters for age, item owning library, and location are applied only to automatically managed carousels
  - a. Automatically Managed?
  - b. Filter by Age?
  - c. Filter by Item Owning Library?
  - d. Filter by Item Location?

## Editing a Carousel Type

Users can rename a carousel type or change the characteristics of existing types.

1. Go to Administration > Server Administration > Carousel Types



2. Select the type you wish to edit with the checkbox at the beginning of the row for that type
3. Select the Actions Button (or right-click on the type's row) and choose Edit Type

## Deleting a Carousel Type

Carousel types can be deleted with the Actions Menu

1. Go to Administration > Server Administration > Carousel Types
2. Select the type you wish to delete with the checkbox at the beginning of the row for that type
3. Select the Actions button (or right-click on the type's row) and choose Delete Type; carousel types cannot be deleted if there are carousels attached

## CAROUSEL DEFINITIONS

The Carousels administration page is used to define the characteristics of the carousel, such as the carousel type, which libraries will be able to display the carousel, and which shelving locations should be used to populate the carousel.

The Carousels administration page is accessed through Administration > Server Administration > Carousels. (Please note that in the community release, this page will eventually move to Local Administration.) The interface displays existing carousels in a grid format. The grid can be filtered by organizational unit, based on ownership. The filter may include ancestor or descendent organization units, depending on the scope chosen. The columns displayed correspond to attributes of the carousel. The following are displayed by default: Carousel ID, Carousel Type, Owner, Name, Last Refresh Time, Active, Maximum Items.

Additional columns may be added to the display with the column picker, including the log in of the creator and/or editor, the carousel's creation or edit time, age limit, item libraries, shelving locations, or associated record bucket.

## Attributes of a Carousel Definition

- Carousel ID - unique identifier assigned by Evergreen when the carousel is created
- Carousel Type - identifies the carousel type associated with the carousel
- Owner - identifies the carousel's owning library organizational unit
- Name - the name or label of the carousel
- Bucket - once the carousel is created, this field displays a link to the carousel's corresponding record bucket
- Age Limit - defines the age limit for the items (titles) that are displayed in the carousel

- **Item Libraries** - identifies which libraries should be used for locating items/titles to add to the carousel; this attribute does not check organizational unit inheritance, so include all libraries that should be used
- **Shelving Locations** - sets which shelving locations can/should be used to find titles for the carousel
- **Last Refresh Time** - identifies the last date when the carousel was refreshed, either automatically or manually. This is currently read-only value.
- **Is Active** - when set to true, the carousel is visible to the public catalog; automatically-maintained carousels are refreshed regularly (inactive automatic carousels are not refreshed)
- **Maximum Items** - defines the maximum number of titles that should appear in the carousel; this attribute is enforced only for automatically maintained carousels

## Creating a Carousel from the Carousels Administration Page

1. Go to Administration > Server Administration > Carousels
2. Select the New Carousels button
3. A popup will open where you will enter information about the carousel
4. Choose the Carousel Type from the drop-down menu
5. Choose the Owning Library from the drop-down
6. Enter the Name of the carousel
7. Enter the Age limit - this field accepts values such as "6 mons or months," "21 days," etc.
8. Choose the Item Libraries - this identifies the library from which items are pulled to include in the carousel
  - a. Click the field. A list of available organizational units will appear.
  - b. Select the organizational unit(s)
    - i. The owning and circulating libraries must be included on this list for titles/items to appear in the carousel. For libraries with items owned at one organizational unit (e.g., the library system), but circulating at a different organizational unit (e.g., a branch), both would need to be included in the list.
  - c. Click Add
9. Shelving Locations - this identifies the shelving locations from which items are pulled to include in the carousel. Please note that this field is not applicable when creating a carousel of the Newly Cataloged carousel type. For creating a carousel of newly cataloged items with shelving location filters, use the Newest Items by Shelving Location type instead.
  - a. Click the field. A list of available shelving locations will appear.

b. Select the shelving location - the library that “owns” the shelving location does not have to be included in the list of Item Libraries

c. Click Add

10Last Refresh Time - not used while creating carousels - display the date/time when the carousel was most recently refreshed

11Is Active - set to true for the carousel to be visible to the public catalog

12Enter the Maximum Number of titles to display in the carousel

13Click Save

## Carousels and Record Buckets

When a carousel is created, a corresponding record bucket is also created. The bucket is owned by the staff user who created the carousel; however, access to the carousel is controlled by the carousel’s owning library. The bucket is removed if the carousel is deleted.

## View a Carousel Bucket from Record Buckets

A record bucket linked to a carousel can be displayed in the Record Bucket interface through the Shared Bucket by ID action.

1. Go to Cataloging > Record Buckets

2. Select the Buckets button

3. Enter the bucket number of the carousel’s bucket; this can be found on the Carousels administration page. “Bucket” is one of the column options for the grid. It displays the bucket number.

4. The contents of the carousel and bucket will be displayed

Users can add or remove records from the bucket. If the associated carousel is automatically maintained, any changes to the bucket’s contents are subject to being overwritten by the next automatic update. Users are warned of this when making changes to the bucket contents.

## Create a Carousel from a Record Bucket

A carousel can be created from a record bucket.

1. Go to Cataloging > Record Buckets

2. The Bucket View tab opens. Select the Buckets button and choose one of the existing buckets to open. The list of titles in the bucket will display on the screen.

3. Select the Buckets button and choose Create Carousel from Bucket



The Create Carousel from Bucket option is visible in both Record Query and Pending Buckets; however, initiating the creation of a carousel from either of these two tabs creates an empty bucket only. It will not pull titles from either to add contents to the carousel.

## Manually Adding Contents to a Carousel from Record Details Page

Titles can be added to a manually maintained carousel through the record details page.

1. Go to the details page for a title record
2. Select the Other Actions button
3. Choose Add to Carousel
4. A drop-down with a list of manually maintained carousels that have been shared to at least one of the user's working locations will appear
5. Choose the carousel from the list
6. Click Add to Selected Carousel



The Add to Carousel menu item is disabled if no qualifying carousels are available

## CAROUSEL LIBRARY MAPPING

The Carousel Library Mapping administration page is used to manage which libraries will display specific carousels, as well as the default display order on a library's public catalog.

The visibility of a carousel at a given organizational unit is not automatically inherited by the descendants of that unit. The carousel's owning organizational unit is automatically added to the list of display organizational units.

The interface is accessed by going to Administration > Server Administration > Carousel Library Mapping. (Please note that in the community release, this page will eventually move to Local Administration.) The interface produces a grid display with a list of the current mapping. The grid can be filtered by organizational unit, based on ownership. The filter may include ancestor or descendent organizational units, depending on the scope chosen.



If a carousel is deleted, its mappings are deleted.

## Attributes of Carousel Library Mapping

- ID - this is a unique identifier automatically generated by the database
- Carousel - this is the carousel affected by the mapping
- Override Name - this creates a name for automatically managed carousels that will be used in the public catalog display of the carousel instead of the carousel's name
- Library - this is the organizational unit associated with the particular mapping; excludes descendent units
- Sequence Number - this is the order in which carousels will be displayed, starting with "0" (Example: Carousel 0 at consortial level will display first. Carousel 1 set at the consortial level will appear just below Carousel 0.)

## Create a New Carousel Mapping

1. Go to Administration > Server Administration > Carousel Library Mapping
2. Select New Carousels Visible at Library
3. Choose the Carousel you wish to map from the Carousel drop-down menu
4. If you want the title of the carousel on the public catalog home screen to be different from the carousel's name, enter your desired name in the Override Name field
5. Click on the Library field to choose on which library organizational unit's public catalog home screen the carousel will appear
6. Enter a number in sequence number to indicate in which order the carousel should appear on the library public catalog home screen. "0" is the top level. "1" is the subsequent level, etc.

# CAROUSELS - OTHER ADMINISTRATIVE FEATURES

## New Staff Permissions

Includes new staff permissions:

- ADMIN\_CAROUSEL\_TYPES - allows users to create, edit, or delete carousel types
- ADMIN\_CAROUSELS - allows users to create, edit, or delete carousels
- REFRESH\_CAROUSEL - allows users to perform a manual refresh of carousels

## New Database Tables

A new table was added to the database to specify the carousel and how it is to be populated, including the name, owning library, details about the most recent refresh, and a link to the Record Bucket and its contents.

Another new table defines carousel types and includes the name, whether the carousel is manually or automatically maintained, and a link to the QStore query specifying the foundation database query used to populate the carousel.

A third new table defines the set of organizational units at which the carousel is visible and the display order in which carousels should be listed at each organizational unit.

## OPAC Templates

Carousels display on the public catalog home page by default. Administrators can modify the public catalog templates to display carousels where desired.

A new Template Toolkit macro called “carousels” allows the Evergreen administrator to inject the contents of one or more carousels into any point in the OPAC. The macro will accept the following parameters:

- carousel\_id
- dynamic (Boolean, default value false)
- image\_size (small, medium, or large)
- width (number of titles to display on a “pane” of the carousel)
- animated (Boolean to specify whether the carousel should automatically cycle through its panes)
- animation\_interval (the interval (in seconds) to wait before advancing to the next pane)

If the carousel\_id parameter is supplied, the carousel with that ID will be displayed. If carousel\_id is not supplied, all carousels visible to the public catalog’s physical\_loc organizational unit is displayed.

The dynamic parameter controls whether the entire contents of the carousel should be written in HTML (dynamic set to false) or if the contents of the carousel should be asynchronously fetched using JavaScript.

A set of CSS classes for the carousels and their contents will be exposed in style.css.tt2. Lightweight JavaScript was used for navigating the carousels, based either on jQuery or native JavaScript. The carousels are responsive.

## Accessibility Features

- Users can advance through the carousel using only a keyboard
- Users can navigate to a title from the carousel using only a keyboard
- Users pause animated carousels
- Changes in the state of the carousel are announced to screen readers.

## OpenSRF

Several Evergreen APIs are used to support the following operations:

- refreshing the contents of an individual carousel
- refreshing the contents of all automatically-maintained carousels that are overdue for refresh
- retrieving the names and contents of a carousel or all visible ones
- creating a carousel by copying an existing record bucket

The retrieval APIs allow for anonymous access to permit Evergreen admins to create alternative implementation of the carousel display or to share the carousels with other systems. [h]

## Cron Job

The carousels feature includes a cronjob added to the example crontab to perform automatic carousel refreshes. It is implemented as a `srfs` script that invokes `open-ils.storage.carousel.refresh_all`.

# Part XIII. Reports



# Table of Contents

60. Introduction .....	290
61. Folders .....	291
Creating Folders .....	291
Managing Folders .....	292
62. Creating Templates .....	293
Choosing Report Fields .....	293
Applying Filters .....	303
Using Base Filters .....	303
63. Generating Reports from Templates .....	308
Viewing and Editing Report Parameters .....	311
64. Viewing Report Output .....	313
65. Cloning Shared Templates .....	316
66. Running Recurring Reports .....	317
67. Template Terminology .....	318
Data Types .....	318
timestamp .....	318
link .....	318
text .....	318
bool .....	318
org_unit .....	319
id .....	319
money .....	319
int .....	319
interval .....	319
Field Transforms .....	319
68. Template Enhancements .....	321
Documentation URL .....	321
Field Hints .....	321
69. Exporting Report Templates Using phpPgAdmin .....	323
Dump the Entire Reports Template Table .....	323
Dump Data with an SQL Statement .....	323

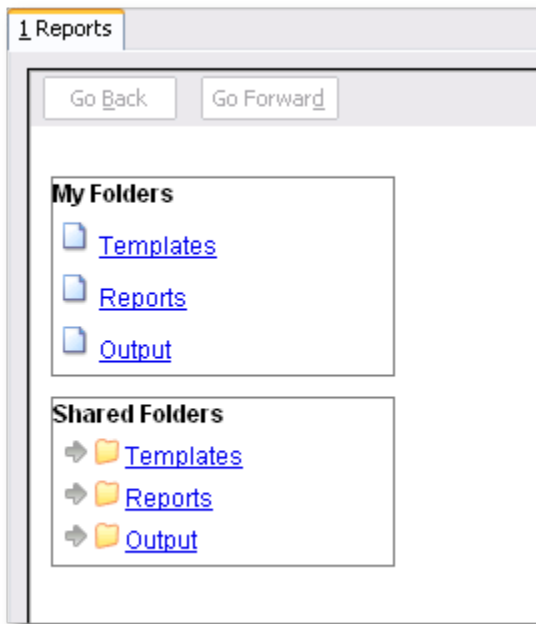
# Chapter 60. Introduction

Learn how to create and use reports in Evergreen.

# Chapter 61. Folders

There are three main components to reports: Templates, Reports, and Output. Each of these components must be stored in a folder. Folders can be private (accessible to your login only) or shared with other staff at your library, other libraries in your system or consortium. It is also possible to selectively share only certain folders and/or subfolders.

There are two parts to the folders pane. The My Folders section contains folders created with your Evergreen account. Folders that other users have shared with you appear in the Shared Folders section under the username of the sharing account.



## Creating Folders

Whether you are creating a report from scratch or working from a shared template you must first create at least one folder.

The steps for creating folders are similar for each reporting function. It is easier to create folders for templates, reports, and output all at once at the beginning, though it is possible to do it before each step. This example demonstrates creating a folder for a template.

1. Click on Templates in the My Folders section.
2. Name the folder. Select Share or Do not share from the dropdown menu.
3. If you want to share your folder, select who you want to share this folder with from the dropdown menu.

4. Click Create Sub Folder.
5. Click OK.
6. Next, create a folder for the report definition to be saved to. Click on Reports.
7. Repeat steps 2-5 to create a Reports folder also called Circulation.
8. Finally, you need to create a folder for the report's output to be saved in. Click on Output.
9. Repeat steps 2-5 to create an Output folder named Circulation.



Using a parallel naming scheme for folders in Templates, Reports, and Output helps keep your reports organized and easier to find

The folders you just created will now be visible by clicking the arrows in My Folders. Bracketed after the folder name is whom the folder is shared with. For example, Circulation (BNCLF) is shared with the North Coast Library Federation. If it is not a shared folder there will be nothing after the folder name. You may create as many folders and sub-folders as you like.

## Managing Folders

Once a folder has been created you can change the name, delete it, create a new subfolder, or change the sharing settings. This example demonstrates changing a folder name; the other choices follow similar steps

1. Click on the folder that you wish to rename.
2. Click Manage Folder.
3. Select Change folder name from the dropdown menu and click Go.
4. Enter the new name and click Submit.
5. Click OK.
6. You will get a confirmation box that the Action Succeeded. Click OK.

# Chapter 62. Creating Templates

Once you have created a folder, the next step in building a report is to create or clone a template. Templates allow you to run a report more than once without building it anew every time, by changing definitions to suit current requirements. For example, you can create a shared template that reports on circulation at a given library. Then, other libraries can use your template and simply select their own library when they run the report.

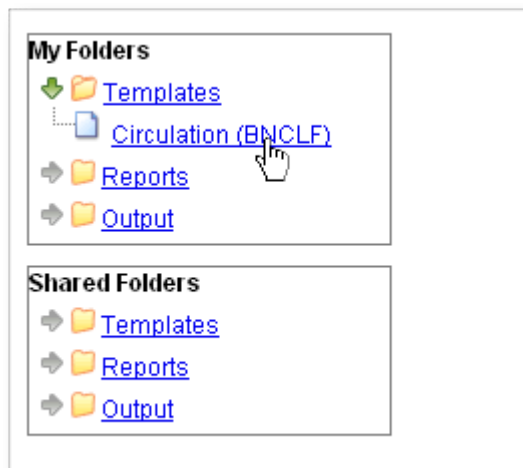
It may take several tries to refine a report to give the output that you want. It can be useful to plan out your report on paper before getting started with the reporting tool. Group together related fields and try to identify the key fields that will help you select the correct source.

It may be useful to create complex queries in several steps. For example, first add all fields from the table at the highest source level. Run a report and check to see that you get results that seem reasonable. Then clone the report, add any filters on fields at that level and run another report. Then drill down to the next table and add any required fields. Run another report. Add any filters at that level. Run another report. Continue until you've drilled down to all the fields you need and added all the filters. This might seem time consuming and you will end up cloning your initial report several times. However, it will help you to check the correctness of your results, and will help to debug if you run into problems because you will know exactly what changes caused the problem. Also consider adding extra fields in the intermediate steps to help you check your results for correctness.

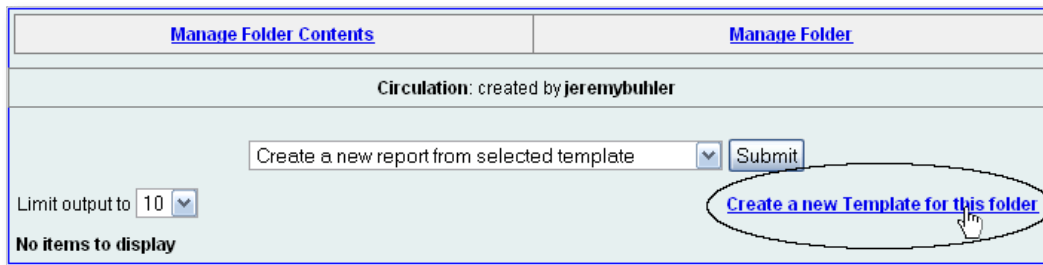
This example illustrates creating a template for circulation statistics. This is an example of the most basic template that you can create. The steps required to create a template are the same every time, but the tables chosen, how the data is transformed and displayed, and the filters used will vary depending on your needs.

## Choosing Report Fields

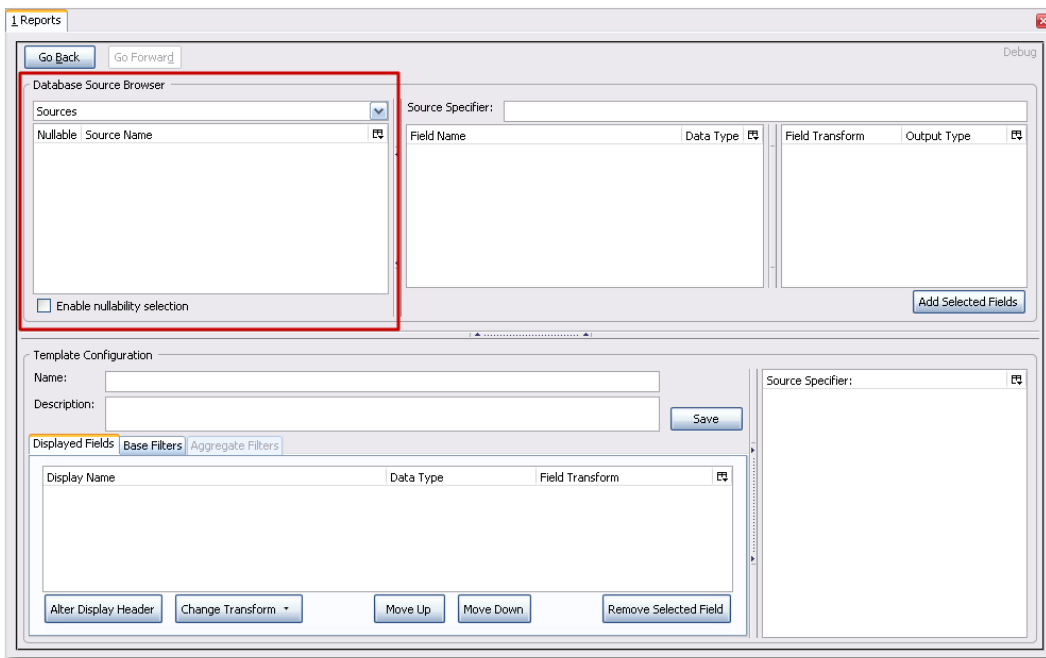
1. Click on the My Folder template folder where you want the template to be saved.



2. Click on Create a new Template for this folder.

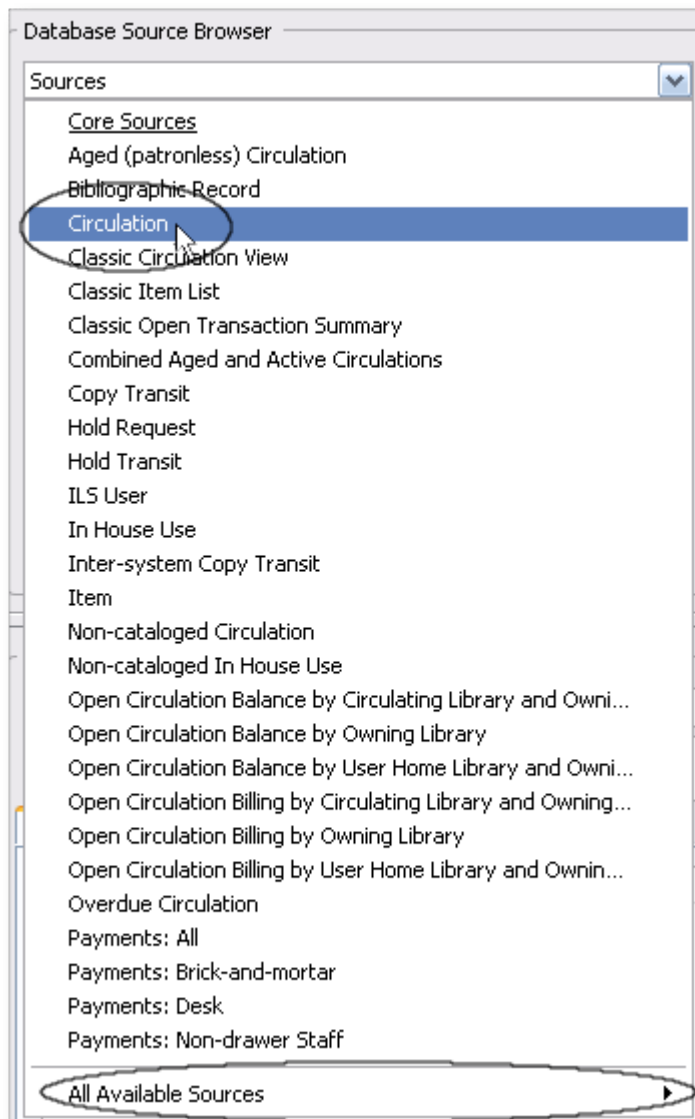


3. You can now see the template creating interface. The upper half of the screen is the Database Source Browser. The top left hand pane contains the database Sources drop-down list. This is the list of tables available as a starting point for your report. Commonly used sources are Circulation (for circ stats and overdue reports), ILS User (for patron reports), and Item (for reports on a library's holdings).

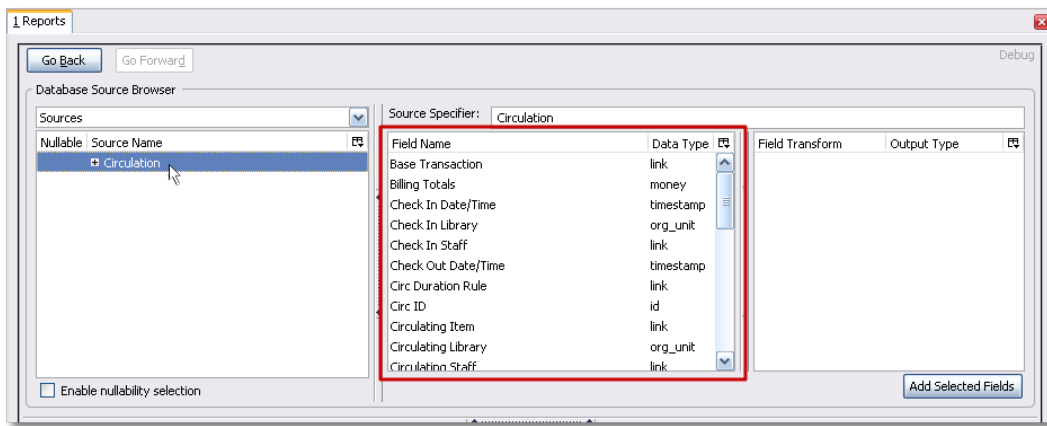


The Enable source nullability checkbox below the sources list is for advanced reporting and should be left unchecked by default.

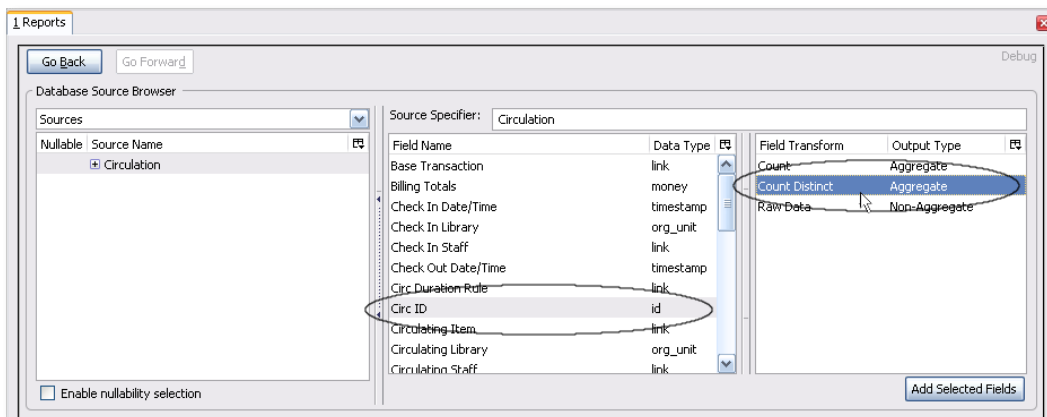
4. Select Circulation in the Sources dropdown menu. Note that the Core Sources for reporting are listed first, however it is possible to access all available sources at the bottom of this dropdown menu. You may only specify one source per template.



5. Click on Circulation to retrieve all the field names in the Field Name pane. Note that the Source Specifier (above the middle and right panes) shows the path that you took to get to the specific field.



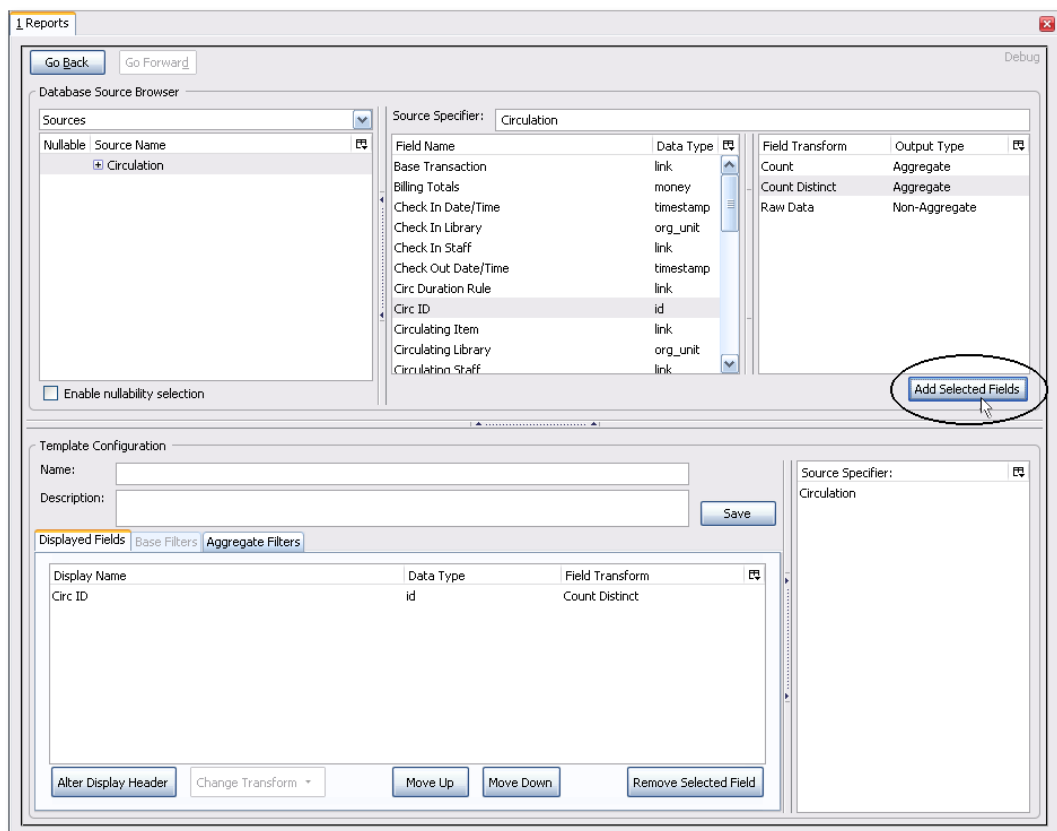
6. Select Circ ID in the middle Field Name pane, and Count Distinct from the right Field Transform pane. The Field Transform pane is where you choose how to manipulate the data from the selected fields. You are counting the number of circulations.



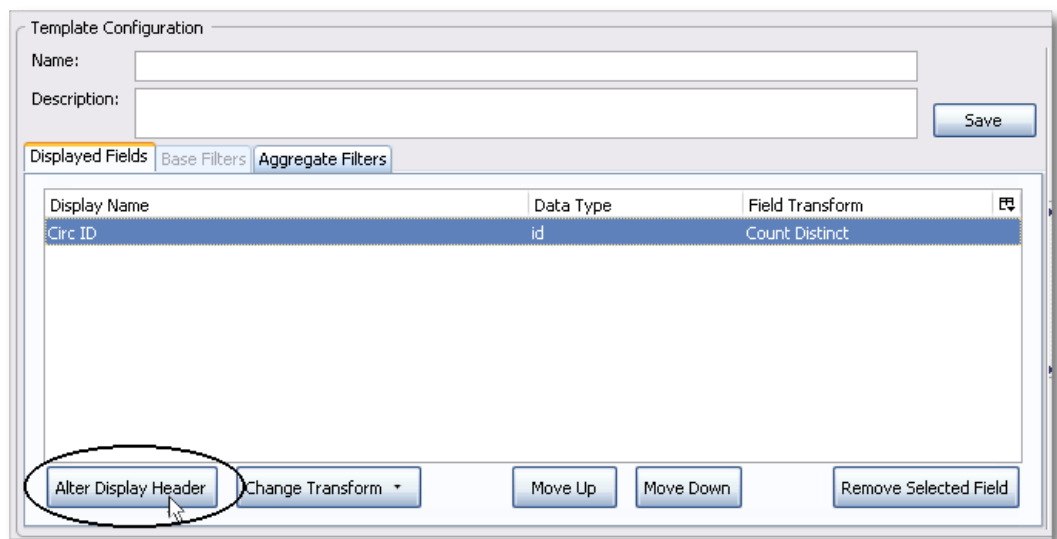
Field Transforms have either an Aggregate or Non-Aggregate output type. See the section called [Field Transforms](#) for more about Count, \_Count Distinct, and other transform options.

7. Click Add Selected Fields underneath the Field Transform pane to add this field to your report output. Note that Circ ID now shows up in the bottom left hand pane under the Displayed Fields tab.



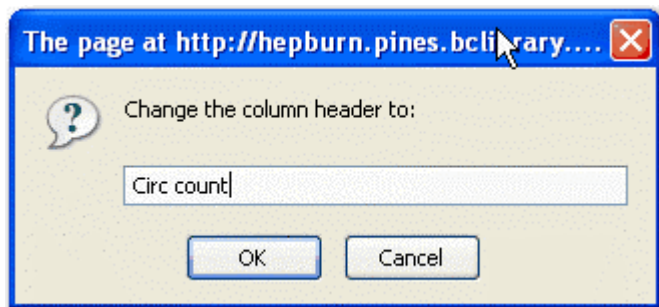


8. Circ ID will be the column header in the report output. You can rename default display names to something more meaningful. To do so in this example, select the Circ ID row and click Alter Display Header.



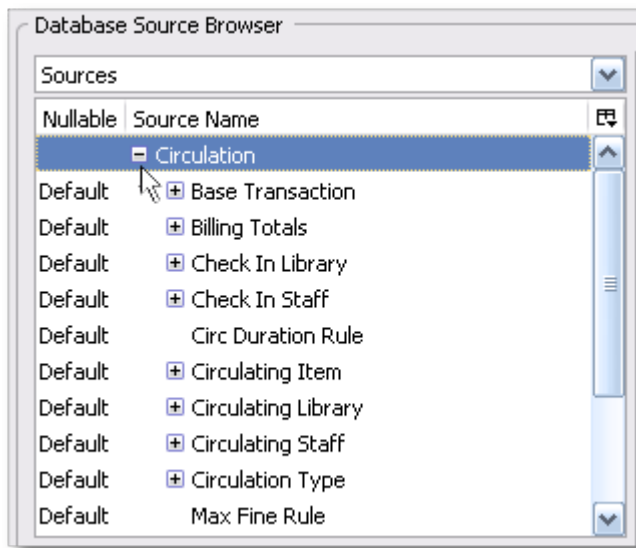
Double-clicking on the displayed field name is a shortcut to altering the display header.

9. Type in the new column header name, for example Circ count and click OK.

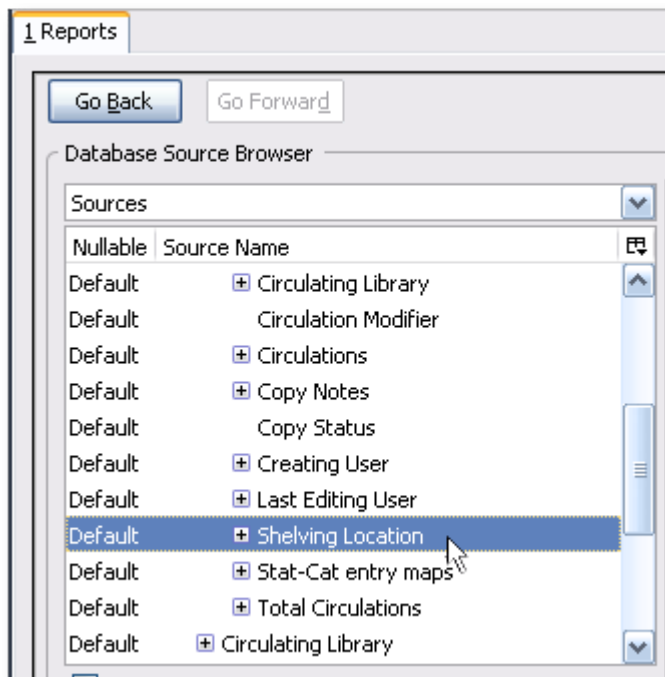


10 Add other data to your report by going back to the Sources pane and selecting the desired fields. In this example, we are going to add Circulating Item → Shelving Location to further refine the circulation report.

In the top left hand Sources pane, expand Circulation. Depending on your computer you will either click on the + sign or on an arrow to expand the tree.

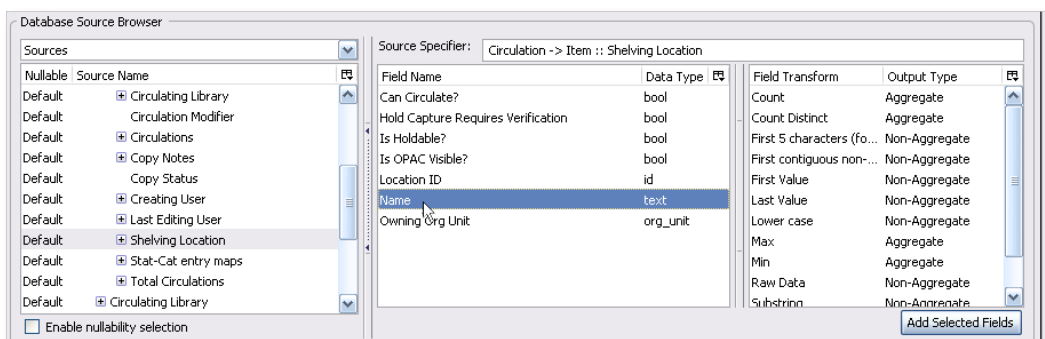


Click on the + or arrow to expand Circulating Item. Select Shelving Location.

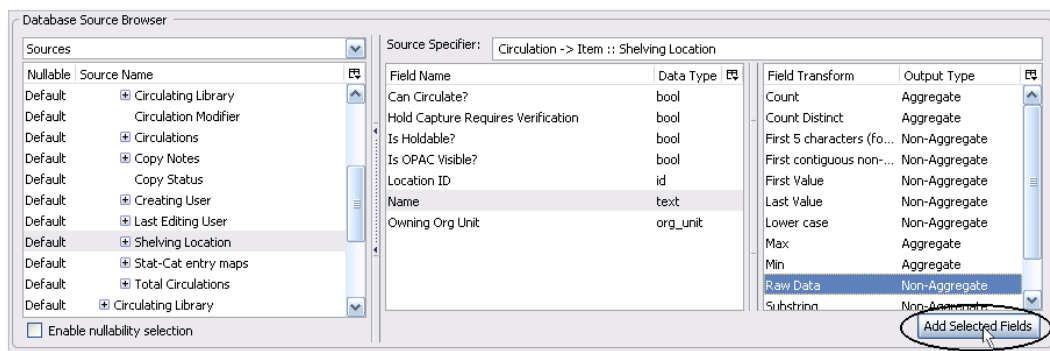


When you are creating a template take the shortest path to the field you need in the left hand Sources pane. Sometimes it is possible to find the same field name further in the file structure, but the shortest path is the most efficient.

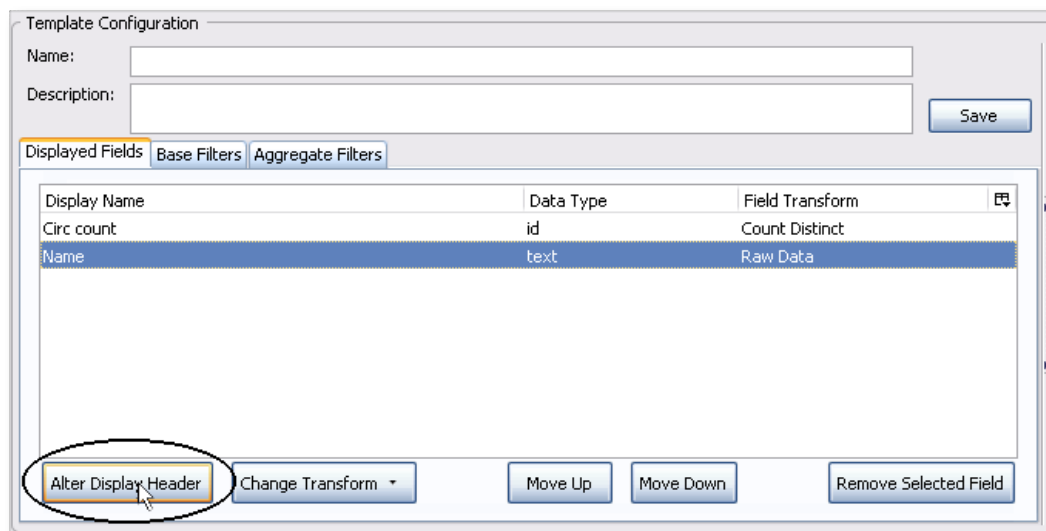
In the Field Name pane select Name.



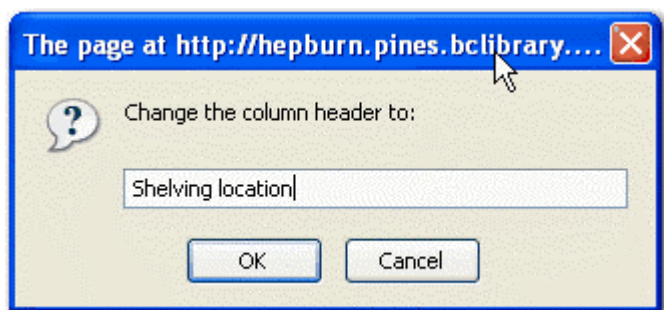
In the upper right Field Transform pane, select Raw Data and click Add Selected Fields. Use Raw Data when you do not wish to transform field data in any manner.



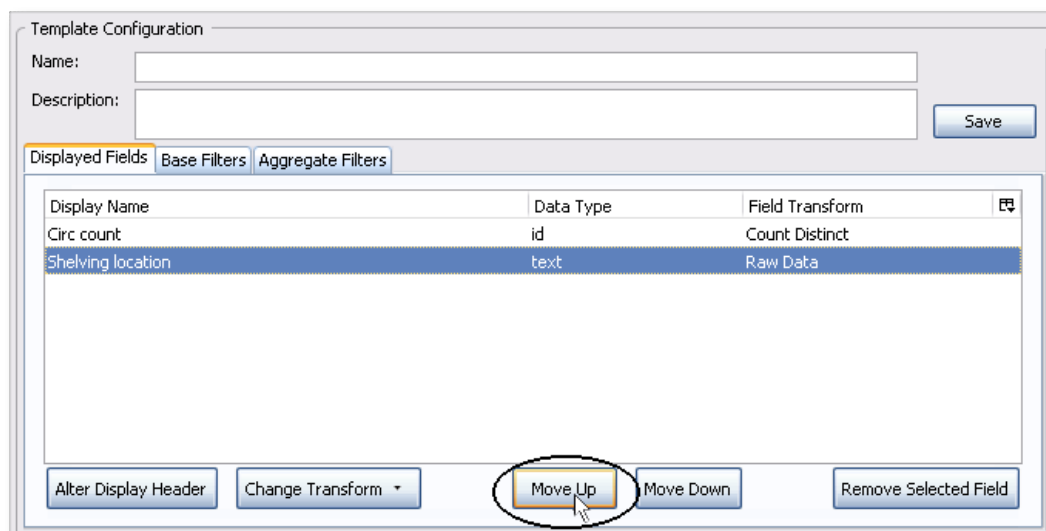
Name will appear in the bottom left pane. Select the Name row and click Alter Display Header.



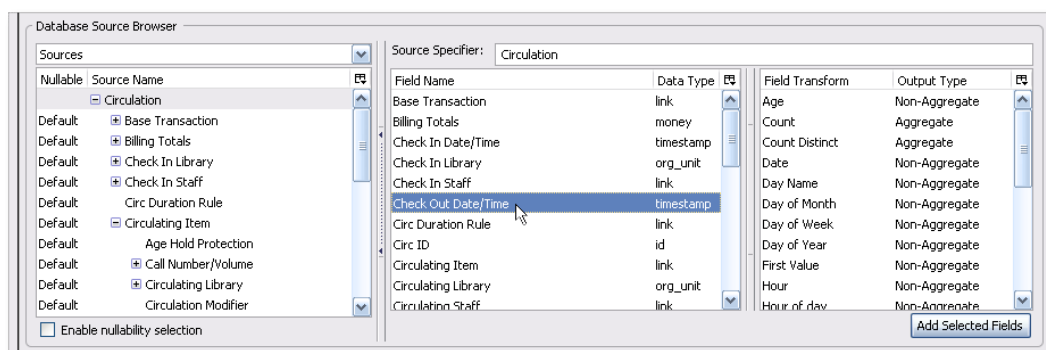
11 Enter a new, more descriptive column header, for example, Shelving location. Click OK.



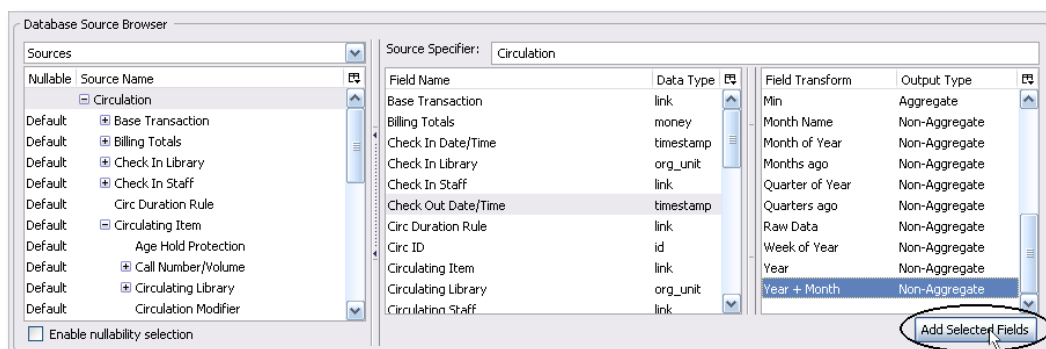
12 Note that the order of rows (top to bottom) will correspond to the order of columns (left to right) on the final report. Select Shelving location and click on Move Up to move Shelving location before Circ count.



13 Return to the Sources pane to add more fields to your template. Under Sources click Circulation, then select Check Out Date/Time from the middle Field Name pane.



14 Select Year + Month in the right hand Field Transform pane and click Add Selected Fields



15 Check Out Date/Time will appear in the Displayed Fields pane. In the report it will appear as a year and month (YYYY-MM) corresponding to the selected transform.

Template Configuration

Name:

Description:  Save

Displayed Fields Base Filters Aggregate Filters

Display Name	Data Type	Field Transform
Shelving location	text	Raw Data
Circ count	id	Count Distinct
Check Out Date/Time	timestamp	Year + Month

Alter Display Header
Change Transform ▾
Move Up
Move Down
Remove Selected Field

16 Select the Check Out Date/Time row. Click Alter Display Header and change the column header to Check out month.

The page at <http://hepburn.pines.bclibrary....> ✕

Change the column header to:

OK Cancel

17 Move Check out month to the top of the list using the Move Up button, so that it will be the first column in an MS Excel spreadsheet or in a chart. Report output will sort by the first column.

Template Configuration

Name:

Description:  Save

Displayed Fields Base Filters Aggregate Filters

Display Name	Data Type	Field Transform
Check out month	timestamp	Year + Month
Shelving location	text	Raw Data
Circ count	id	Count Distinct

Alter Display Header
Change Transform ▾
Move Up
Move Down
Remove Selected Field



Note the Change Transform button in the bottom left hand pane. It has the same function as the upper right Field Transform pane for fields that have already been added.



## Applying Filters

Evergreen reports access the entire database, so to limit report output to a single library or library system you need to apply filters.

After following the steps in the previous section you will see three fields in the bottom left hand Template Configuration pane. There are three tabs in this pane: Displayed Fields (covered in the previous section), Base Filters and Aggregate Filters. A filter allows you to return only the results that meet the criteria you set.

Base Filters apply to non-aggregate output types, while Aggregate Filters are used for aggregate types. In most reports you will be using the Base Filters tab. For more information on aggregate and non-aggregate types see the section called “Field Transforms”.

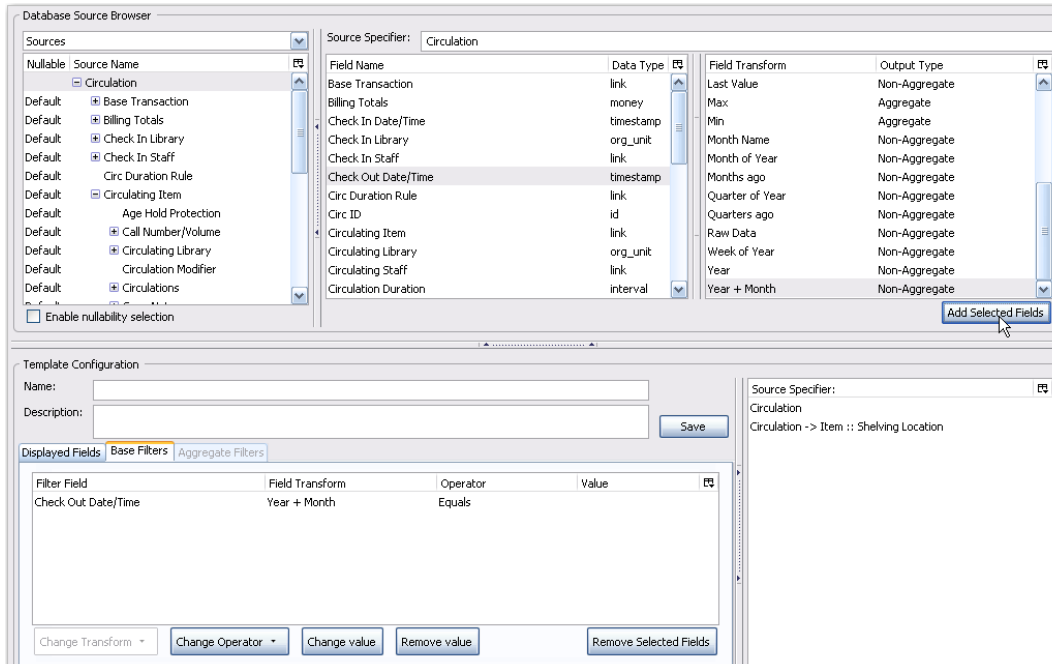
There are many available operators when using filters. Some examples are Equals, In list, is NULL, Between, Greater than or equal to, and so on. In list is the most flexible operator, and in this case will allow you flexibility when running a report from this template. For example, it would be possible to run a report on a list of timestamps (in this case will be trimmed to year and month only), run a report on a single month, or run a report comparing two months. It is also possible to set up recurring reports to run at the end of each month.

In this example we are going to use a Base Filter to filter out one library’s circulations for a specified time frame. The time frame in the template will be configured so that you can change it each time you run the report.

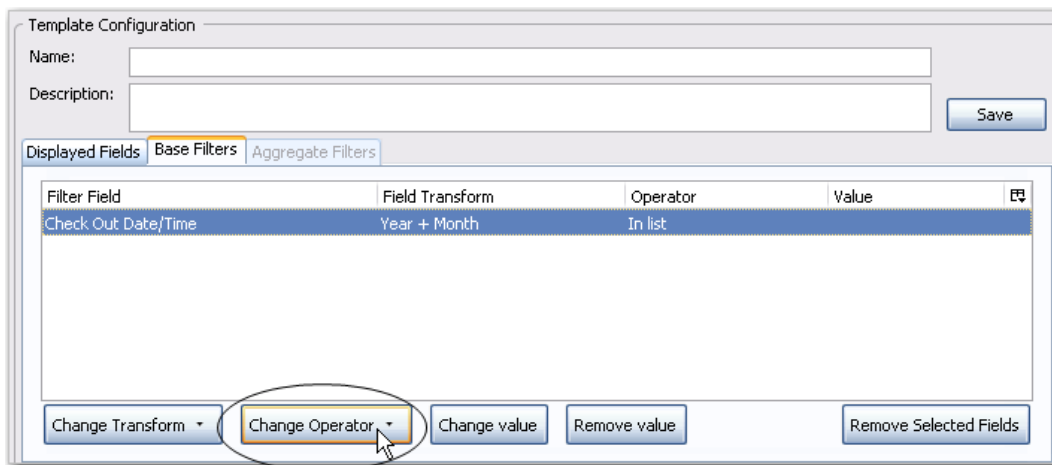
## Using Base Filters

1. Select the Base Filters tab in the bottom Template Configuration pane.

2. For this circulation statistics example, select Circulation --> Check Out Date/Time --> Year + Month and click on Add Selected Fields. You are going to filter on the time period.

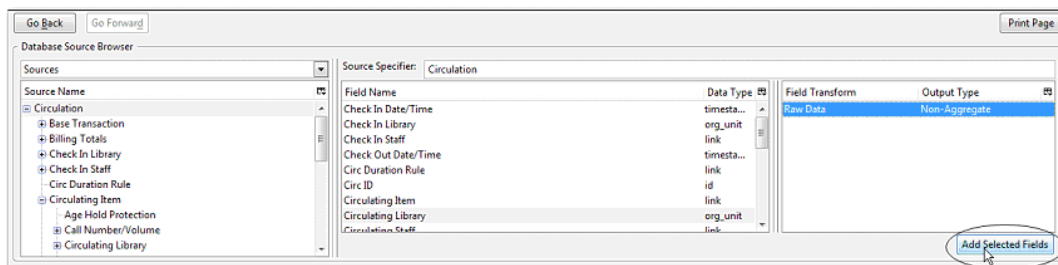


3. Select Check Out Date/Time. Click on Change Operator and select In list from the dropdown menu.

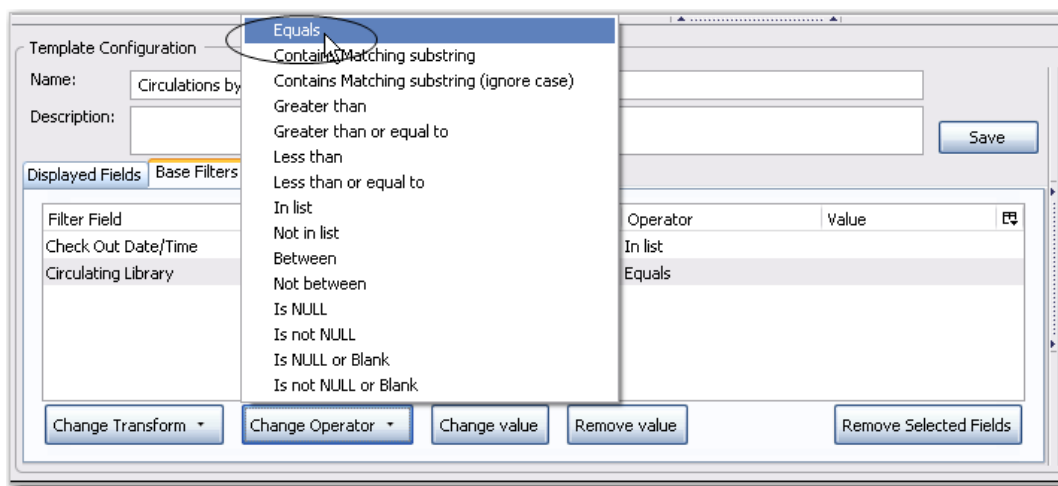


4. To filter on the location of the circulation select Circulation --> Circulating library --> Raw Data and click on Add Selected Fields.





5. Select Circulating Library and click on Change Operator and select Equals. Note that this is a template, so the value for Equals will be filled out when you run the report.



For multi-branch libraries, you would select Circulating Library with In list as the operator, so you could specify the branch(es) when you run the report. This leaves the template configurable to current requirements. In comparison, sometimes you will want to hardcode true/false values into a template. For example, deleted bibliographic records remain in the database, so perhaps you want to hardcode deleted=false, so that deleted records don't show up in the results. You might want to use deleted=true, for a template for a report on deleted items in the last month.

6. Once you have configured your template, you must name and save it. Name this template Circulations by month for one library. You can also add a description. In this example, the title is descriptive enough, so a description is not necessary. Click Save.

Template Configuration

Name:

Description:

**Save**

Displayed Fields | **Base Filters** | Aggregate Filters

Filter Field	Field Transform	Operator	Value	
Check Out Date/Time	Year + Month	In list		
Circulating Library	Raw Data	Equals		

Change Transform | Change Operator | Change value | Remove value | Remove Selected Fields

7. Click OK.

The page at <http://hepburn.pines.bcllibrary.ca>

Name : Circulations by month for one library  
Description:  
Save Template?

OK Cancel

8. You will get a confirmation dialogue box that the template was successfully saved. Click OK.

The page at <http://hepburn.pines.bcllibrary.ca> says:

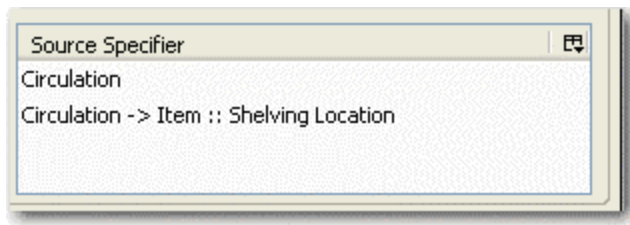
Template Circulations by month for one library was successfully saved.

OK Cancel

After saving it is not possible to edit a template. To make changes you will need to clone it and edit the clone



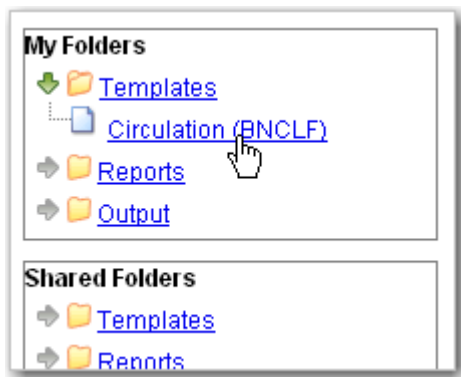
The bottom right hand pane is also a source specifier. By selecting one of these rows you will limit the fields that are visible to the sources you have specified. This may be helpful when reviewing templates with many fields. Use Ctrl+Click to select or deselect items.



# Chapter 63. Generating Reports from Templates

Now you are ready to run the report from the template you have created.

1. In the My Folders section click the arrow next to Templates to expand this folder and select circulation.



2. Select the box beside Circulations by month for one library. Select Create a new report from the dropdown menu. Click Submit.

<a href="#">Manage Folder Contents</a>		<a href="#">Manage Folder</a>				
Circulation: created by jeremybuhler						
Create a new report from selected template		<input type="button" value="Submit"/>				
Limit output to 10						
<a href="#">Create a new Template for this folder</a>						
Select	All	None	name	description	create_time	owner
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>			Circulations by month for one library		2009-11-24 15:40	<a href="#">jeremybuhler</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>			Monthly Circulation by Shelving Location (clone)	Number of circulations (including renewal) occurred at a library. Shelving locations not on the list had 0 circulation.	2009-11-24 15:35	<a href="#">jeremybuhler</a>

3. Complete the first part of report settings. Only Report Name and Choose a folder... are required fields.

Template Name: ❶	Circulations by month for one library
Template Creator:	jeremybuhler
Template Description:	
Report Name: ❷	October 2009 circ
Report Description: ❸	Prince Rupert circulation stats by shelving location for October 2009
Report Columns: ❹	Check out month Shelving location Circ count
Pivot Label Column:	- Select One (optional) -
Pivot Data Column: ❺	Circ count
Choose a folder to store this report definition: ❻	Selected Folder: <b>Circulation</b> <a href="#">Report Folders</a> <a href="#">Circulation</a>

1) Template Name, Template Creator, and Template Description are for informational purposes only. They are hard coded when the template is created. At the report definition stage it is not possible to change them.

2) Report Name is required. Reports stored in the same folder must have unique names.

3) Report Description is optional but may help distinguish among similar reports.

4) Report Columns lists the columns that will appear in the output. This is derived from the template and cannot be changed during report definition.

5) Pivot Label Column and Pivot Data Column are optional. Pivot tables are a different way to view data. If you currently use pivot tables in MS Excel it is better to select an Excel output and continue using pivot tables in Excel.

6) You must choose a report folder to store this report definition. Only report folders under My Folders are available. Click on the desired folder to select it.

4. Select values for the Circulation > Check Out Date/Time. Use the calendar widget or manually enter the desired dates, then click Add to include the date on the list. You may add multiple dates.

Pivot Label Column:	- Select One (optional) -
Pivot Data Column:	Circ count
Choose a folder to store this report definition:	<a href="#">Report Folders</a> <a href="#">Circulation</a>

Column	Transform	In list	Params
Circulation -> Check Out Date/Time	Year + Month		Real Date: 2009-10 Add Del 2009-10

The Transform for this field is Year + Month, so even if you choose a specific date (2009-10-20) it will appear as the corresponding month only (2009-10).

It is possible to select relative dates. If you select a relative date 1 month ago you can schedule reports to automatically run each month. If you want to run monthly reports that also show comparative data from one year ago, select a relative date 1 month ago, and 13 months ago.

5. Select a value for the Circulating Library.

6. Complete the bottom portion of the report definition interface, then click Save.

1) Select one or more output formats. In this example the report output will be available as an Excel spreadsheet, an HTML table (for display in the staff client or browser), and as a bar chart.

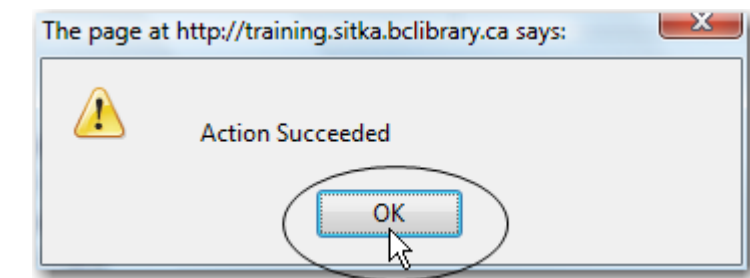
2) If you want the report to be recurring, check the box and select the Recurrence Interval as described in [Recurring Reports](#). In this example, as this is a report that will only be run once, the Recurring Report box is not checked.

3) Select Run as soon as possible for immediate output. It is also possible to set up reports that run automatically at future intervals.

4) It is optional to fill out an email address where a completion notice can be sent. The email will contain a link to password-protected report output (staff login required). If you have an email address in your Local System Administrator account it will automatically appear in the email notification box. However, you can enter a different email address or multiple addresses separated by commas.

7. Select a folder for the report's output.

8. You will get a confirmation dialogue box that the Action Succeeded. Click OK.

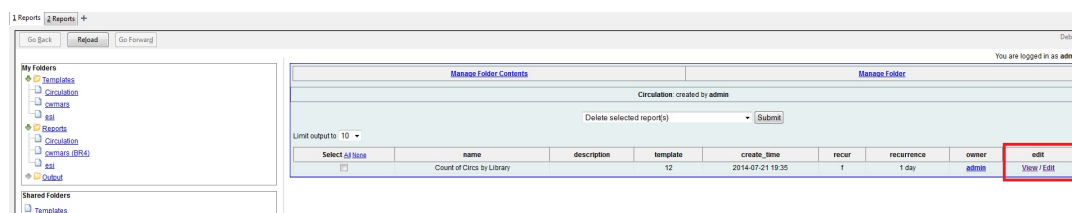


Once saved, reports stay there forever unless you delete them.

## Viewing and Editing Report Parameters

New options to view or edit report parameters are available from the reports folder.

To view the parameters of a report, select the report that you want to view from the Reports folder, and click View. This will enable you to view the report, including links to external documentation and field hints. However, you cannot make any changes to the report.



To edit the parameters of a report, select the report that you want to view from the Reports folder, and click Edit. After making changes, you can Save [the] Report or Save as New. If you Save the Report, any subsequent report outputs that are generated from this report will reflect the changes that you have made.

In addition, whenever there is a pending (scheduled, but not yet started) report output, the interface will warn you that the pending output will be modified. At that point, you can either continue or choose the alternate Save as New option, leaving the report output untouched.

Template Name:	Count of Circulating Items by Library and Check Out Date
Template Creator:	admin
Template Description:	
Template Documentation URL:	<a href="http://docs.evergreen-ils.org/">http://docs.evergreen-ils.org/</a>
Report Name:	Count of Circs by Librai
Report Description:	
Report Columns:	Circ ID <u>Count of Circulating Items</u> Circulating Library Check Out Date/Time
Pivot Label Column:	-- Select One (optional) --
Pivot Data Column:	Circ ID
Choose a folder to store this report definition:	Selected Folder: Circulation <a href="#">Report Folders</a> Circulation cwmars esi

Column	Transform	Action
<b>Output Options</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Excel Output</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> CSV Output</li> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> HTML Output               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Bar Charts</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Line Charts</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
Recurring Report:	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Recurrence Interval:	1 Day(s)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Run as soon as possible		
<input type="checkbox"/> 2014-07-22 Midnight		
Send completion notification to this Email address:		
Choose a folder to store this report's output:	Selected Folder: Circulation <a href="#">Output Folders</a> Circulation cwmars esi	

If, after making changes, you select, Save as New, then you have created a new report by cloning and amending a previously existing report. Note that if you create a new report, you will be prompted to rename the new report. Evergreen does not allow two reports with the same name to exist. To view or edit your new report, select the reports folder to which you saved it.

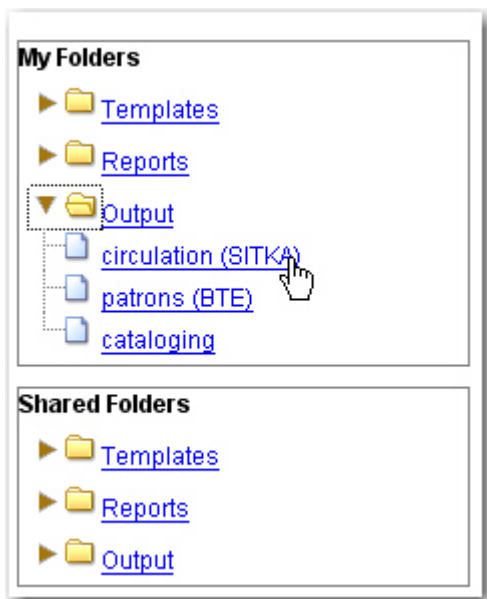
You are logged in as a									
<a href="#">Manage Folder Contents</a>					<a href="#">Manage Folder</a>				
Circulation: created by admin									
Delete selected report(s) <input type="button" value="Submit"/>									
Limit output to: 10									
Select All None	name	description	template	create_time	recur	recurrence	owner	edit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Count of Circs by Library		12	2014-07-21 19:35	f	1 day	admin	<a href="#">View / Edit</a>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Count of Circs by Library2		12	2014-07-22 10:49	f	1 day	admin	<a href="#">View / Edit</a>	



# Chapter 64. Viewing Report Output

When a report runs Evergreen sends an email with a link to the output to the address defined in the report. Output is also stored in the specified Output folder and will remain there until manually deleted.

1. To view report output in the staff client, open the reports interface from Administration --> Local Administration --> Reports
2. Click on Output to expand the folder. Select Circulation (where you just saved the circulation report output).



3. View report output is the default selection in the dropdown menu. Select Recurring Monthly Circ by Location by clicking the checkbox and click Submit.

View report output

Limit output to  Pending Items

No items to display

---

Limit output to  Completed Items

Select	report	run_time	complete_time	runner	email	folder	error_text	excel_format	html_format	csv_format
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">October 2009 circs</a>	2009-11-24 18:00		<a href="#">jeremybuhler</a>		296		t	t	f

4. A new tab will open for the report output. Select either Tabular Output or Excel Output. If Bar Charts was selected during report definition the chart will also appear.

5. Tabular output looks like this:

Check out month	Shelving location	Circ count
2009-10	Adult Fiction	10
2009-10	Adult Fiction - Second Floor	1125
2009-10	Adult Non-Fiction	1188
2009-10	Adult Non-fiction	12
2009-10	Adult Paperbacks - Mystery	1
2009-10	Adult Videos	368
2009-10	Adult Videos - Educational	66
2009-10	Biographies	34
2009-10	CD-Roms	3
2009-10	CDs	144
2009-10	Children's Videos	232
2009-10	Children's Videos - Educational	2
2009-10	Christmas Storage	5
2009-10	DVDs	981
2009-10	JP Basement Storage	56
2009-10	Juvenile Easy Readers	152
2009-10	Juvenile Fiction	476
2009-10	Juvenile Non-Fiction	199
2009-10	Juvenile Picture Books	634
2009-10	Large Print	73

6. If you want to manipulate, filter or graph this data, Excel output would be more useful. Excel output will generate a ".xlsx" file. Excel output looks like this in Excel:

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help						
A1      fx Check out month						
	A	B	C	D	E	
1	Check out month	Shelving location	Circ count			
2	2009-10	Adult Fiction	10			
3	2009-10	Adult Fiction - Second Floor	1125			
4	2009-10	Adult Non-Fiction	1188			
5	2009-10	Adult Non-fiction	12			
6	2009-10	Adult Paperbacks - Mystery	1			
7	2009-10	Adult Videos	368			
8	2009-10	Adult Videos - Educational	66			
9	2009-10	Biographies	34			
10	2009-10	CD-ROMs	3			
11	2009-10	CDs	144			
12	2009-10	Children's Videos	232			
13	2009-10	Children's Videos - Education	2			
14	2009-10	Christmas Storage	5			
15	2009-10	DVDs	981			
16	2009-10	JP Basement Storage	56			
17	2009-10	Juvenile Easy Readers	152			
18	2009-10	Juvenile Fiction	476			
19	2009-10	Juvenile Non-Fiction	199			
20	2009-10	Juvenile Picture Books	634			
21	2009-10	Large Print	73			
22	2009-10	Literacy Collection	4			
23	2009-10	Multilingual Collection	32			
24	2009-10	Multilingual Juvenile French	22			

# Chapter 65. Cloning Shared Templates

This chapter describes how to make local copies of shared templates for routine reports or as a starting point for customization. When creating a new template it is a good idea to review the shared templates first: even if the exact template you need does not exist it is often faster to modify an existing template than to build a brand new one. A Local System Administrator account is required to clone templates from the Shared Folders section and save them to My Folders.

The steps below assume you have already created at least one Templates folder. If you haven't done this, please see [Creating Folders](#).

1. Access the reports interface from Administration → Reports
2. Under Shared Folders expand the Templates folder and the subfolder of the report you wish to clone. To expand the folders click on the grey arrow or folder icon. Do not click on the blue underlined hyperlink.
3. Click on the subfolder.
4. Select the template you wish to clone. From the dropdown menu choose Clone selected templates, then click Submit.



By default Evergreen only displays the first 10 items in any folder. To view all content, change the Limit output setting from 10 to All.

5. Choose the folder where you want to save the cloned template, then click Select Folder. Only template folders created with your account will be visible. If there are no folders to choose from please see [Creating Folders](#).
6. The cloned template opens in the template editor. From here you may modify the template by adding, removing, or editing fields and filters as described in [Creating Templates](#). Template Name and Description can also be edited. When satisfied with your changes click Save.
7. Click OK in the resulting confirmation windows.

Once saved it is not possible to edit a template. To make changes, clone a template and change the clone.

# Chapter 66. Running Recurring Reports

Recurring reports are a useful way to save time by scheduling reports that you run on a regular basis, such as monthly circulation and monthly patron registration statistics. When you have set up a report to run on a monthly basis you'll get an email informing you that the report has successfully run. You can click on a link in the email that will take you directly to the report output. You can also access the output through the reporter interface as described in [Viewing Report Output](#).

To set up a monthly recurring report follow the procedure in [Generating Reports from Templates](#) but make the changes described below.

1. Select the Recurring Report check-box and set the recurrence interval to 1 month.
2. Do not select Run ASAP. Instead schedule the report to run early on the first day of the next month. Enter the date in YYYY-MM-DD format.
3. Ensure there is an email address to receive completion emails. You will receive an email completion notice each month when the output is ready.
4. Select a folder for the report's output.
5. Click Save Report.
6. You will get a confirmation dialogue box that the Action Succeeded. Click OK.

You will get an email on the 1st of each month with a link to the report output. By clicking this link it will open the output in a web browser. It is still possible to login to the staff client and access the output in Output folder.

How to stop or make changes to an existing recurring report? Sometimes you may wish to stop or make changes to a recurring report, e.g. the recurrence interval, generation date, email address to receive completion email, output format/folder or even filter values (such as the number of days overdue). You will need to delete the current report from the report folder, then use the above procedure to set up a new recurring report with the desired changes. Please note that deleting a report also deletes all output associated with it.



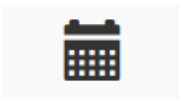
Once you have been on Evergreen for a year, you could set up your recurring monthly reports to show comparative data from one year ago. To do this select relative dates of 1 month ago and 13 months ago.

# Chapter 67. Template Terminology

## Data Types

The information in Evergreen's database can be classified in nine data types, formats that describe the type of data and/or its use. These were represented by text-only labels in prior versions of Evergreen. Evergreen 3.0 has replaced the text labels with icons. When building templates in Reports, you will find these icons in the Field Name Pane of the template creation interface.

### timestamp



An exact date and time (year, month, day, hour, minutes, and seconds). Remember to select the appropriate date/time transform. Raw Data includes second and timezone information, which is usually more than is required for a report.

### link



A link to another database table. Link outputs a number that is a meaningful reference for the database but not of much use to a human user. You will usually want to drill further down the tree in the Sources pane and select fields from the linked table. However, in some instances you might want to use a link field. For example, to count the number of patrons who borrowed items you could do a count on the Patron link data.

### text



A field of text. You will usually want to use the Raw Data transform.

### bool



True or False. Commonly used to filter out deleted item or patron records.

## org\_unit



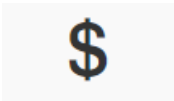
Organizational Unit - a number representing a library, library system, or federation. When you want to filter on a library, make sure that the field name is on an org\_unit or id data type.

## id



A unique number assigned by the database to identify each record. These numbers are meaningful references for the database but not of much use to a human user. Use in displayed fields when counting records or in filters.

## money



A monetary amount.

## int



Integer (a number)

## interval



A period of time.

# Field Transforms

A Field Transform tells the reporter how to process a field for output. Different data types have different transform options.

**Raw Data.** To display a field exactly as it appears in the database use the Raw Data transform, available for all data types.

**Count and Count Distinct.** These transforms apply to the id data type and are used to count database records (e.g. for circulation statistics). Use Count to tally the total number of records. Use Count Distinct to count the number of unique records, removing duplicates.

To demonstrate the difference between Count and Count Distinct, consider an example where you want to know the number of active patrons in a given month, where "active" means they borrowed at least one item. Each circulation is linked to a Patron ID, a number identifying the patron who borrowed the item. If we use the Count Distinct transform for Patron IDs we will know the number of unique patrons who circulated at least one book (2 patrons in the table below). If instead, we use Count, we will know how many books were circulated, since every circulation is linked to a patron ID and duplicate values are also counted. To identify the number of active patrons in this example the Count Distinct transform should be used.

Title	Patron ID	Patron Name
Harry Potter and the Chamber of Secrets	001	John Doe
Northern Lights	001	John Doe
Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone	222	Jane Doe

**Output Type.** Note that each transform has either an Aggregate or Non-Aggregate output type.

Selecting a Non-Aggregate output type will return one row of output in your report for each row in the database. Selecting an Aggregate output type will group together several rows of the database and return just one row of output with, say, the average value or the total count for that group. Other common aggregate types include minimum, maximum, and sum.

When used as filters, non-aggregate and aggregate types correspond to Base and Aggregate filters respectively. To see the difference between a base filter and an aggregate filter, imagine that you are creating a report to count the number of circulations in January. This would require a base filter to specify the month of interest because the month is a non-aggregate output type. Now imagine that you wish to list all items with more than 25 holds. This would require an aggregate filter on the number of holds per item because you must use an aggregate output type to count the holds.



# Chapter 68. Template Enhancements

## Documentation URL

You can add a link to local documentation that can help staff create a report template. To add documentation to a report template, click Admin → Local Administration → Reports, and create a new report template. A new field, Documentation URL, appears in the Template Configuration panel. Enter a URL that points to relevant documentation.

The screenshot shows the 'Template Configuration' panel in a web application. At the top, there are navigation buttons: 'Go Back', 'Reload', and 'Go Forward'. Below these is a 'Database Source Browser' section with a 'Sources' dropdown menu and a 'Field Name' input field. The 'Sources' dropdown is currently set to 'Nullable Source Name'. Below this is a checkbox labeled 'Enable nullability selection'. The 'Template Configuration' section has fields for 'Name', 'Description', and 'Documentation URL'. The 'Documentation URL' field is highlighted with a red box and contains the text 'http://docs.evergreen-ils.org/'. To the right of this field is a 'Save' button. At the bottom, there are tabs for 'Displayed Fields', 'Base Filters', and 'Aggregate Filters'.

The link to this documentation will also appear in your list of report templates.

The screenshot shows a list of report templates. On the left, there is a sidebar with 'My Folders' and 'Shared Folders'. The main area displays a table of report templates. The table has columns for 'name', 'description', 'docs', and 'create\_time'. The 'docs' column for the first row is highlighted with a red box and contains the text 'External Documentation'. The table also includes a 'Limit output to' dropdown set to '10' and a 'Submit' button. At the top right, there is a 'Manage Folder' button and a 'You are by' label.

## Field Hints

Descriptive information about fields or filters in a report template can be added to the Field Hints portion of the Template Configuration panel. For example, a circulation report template might include the field, Circ ID. You can add content to the Field hints to further define this field for staff and provide a reminder about the type of information that they should select for this field.

To view a field hint, click the Column Picker, and select Field Hint. The column will be added to the display.

1 Reports +

Go Back Reload Go Forward

Database Source Browser

Sources

Source Specifier:

Field Name

Nullable Source Name

Enable nullability selection

Template Configuration

Name:

Description:

Documentation URL: <http://docs.evergreen-ils.org/>

Save

Displayed Fields Base Filters Aggregate Filters

Display Name	Data Type	Field Transform	Field Hint
			<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Display Name Field Name <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Data Type <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field Transform Field Transform Type <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Field Hint

To add or edit a field hint, select a filter or field, and click Change Field Hint. Enter text, and click Ok.

Template Configuration

Name:

Description:

Documentation URL: <http://docs.evergreen-ils.org/>

Save

Displayed Fields Base Filters Aggregate Filters

Display Name	Data Type	Field Transform	Field Hint
Circ ID	id	Count	Count of Circulating Items

# Chapter 69. Exporting Report Templates Using phpPgAdmin

Once the data is exported. Database Administrators/Systems Administrators can easily import this data into the templates folder to make it available in the client.

## Dump the Entire Reports Template Table

The data exported in this method can create issues importing into a different system if you do not have a matching folder and owner. This is going to export report templates created in your system. The most important fields for importing into the new system are name, description, and data. Data defines the actual structure of the report. The owner and folder fields will unique to the system they were exported from and will have to be altered to ensure they match the appropriate owner and folder information for the new system.

1. Go to the Reporter schema. Report templates are located in the Template table
2. Click on the link to the Template table
3. Click the export button at the top right of the phpPgAdmin screen
4. Make sure the following is selected
  - a. Data Only (checked)
  - b. Format: Select CSV or Tabbed did get the data in a text format
  - c. Download checked
5. Click export button at the bottom
6. A text file will download to your local system

## Dump Data with an SQL Statement

The following statement could be used to grab the data in the folder and dump it with admin account as the owner and the first folder in your system.

```
SELECT 1 as owner, name, description, data, 1 as folder FROM reporter.template
```

or use the following to capture your folder names for export

```
SELECT 1 as owner, t.name, t.description, t.data, f.name as folder  
FROM reporter.template t  
JOIN reporter.template_folder f ON t.folder=f.id
```

1. Run the above query

2. Click the download link at the bottom of the page
3. Select the file format (CSV or Tabbed)
4. Check download
5. A text file with the report template data will be downloaded.

# **Part XIV. Staff administration**

# Table of Contents

<u>70. Introduction</u> .....	<u>327</u>
<u>71. Describing your people</u> .....	<u>328</u>
<u>Setting the staff user's working location</u> .....	<u>328</u>
<u>Comparing approaches for managing permissions</u> .....	<u>329</u>
<u>Managing permissions in the staff client</u> .....	<u>330</u>
<u>Where to find existing permissions and what they mean</u> .....	<u>330</u>
<u>Where to find existing Permission Groups</u> .....	<u>330</u>
<u>Adding or removing permissions from a Permission Group</u> .....	<u>330</u>
<u>Managing role-based permission groups in the staff client</u> .....	<u>331</u>
<u>Secondary Group Permissions</u> .....	<u>331</u>
<u>Managing role-based permission groups in the database</u> .....	<u>334</u>
<u>72. User and Group Permissions</u> .....	<u>337</u>
<u>Staff Accounts</u> .....	<u>337</u>
<u>Staff Account Permissions</u> .....	<u>338</u>
<u>Granting Additional Permissions</u> .....	<u>338</u>
<u>73. Work Log</u> .....	<u>341</u>
<u>Expanding the Work Log</u> .....	<u>341</u>
<u>74. Recent Staff Searches</u> .....	<u>342</u>
<u>Administrative Settings</u> .....	<u>342</u>
<u>Recent Staff Searches</u> .....	<u>343</u>

# Chapter 70. Introduction

This section describes how to administer staff accounts.

# Chapter 71. Describing your people

Many different members of your staff will use your Evergreen system to perform the wide variety of tasks required of the library.

When the Evergreen installation was completed, a number of permission groups should have been automatically created. These permission groups are:

- Users
- Patrons
- Staff
- Catalogers
- Circulators
- Acquisitions
- Acquisitions Administrator
- Cataloging Administrator
- Circulation Administrator
- Local Administrator
- Serials
- System Administrator
- Global Administrator
- Data Review
- Volunteers

Each of these permission groups has a different set of permissions connected to them that allow them to do different things with the Evergreen system. Some of the permissions are the same between groups; some are different. These permissions are typically tied to one or more working location (sometimes referred to as a working organizational unit or work OU) which affects where a particular user can exercise the permissions they have been granted.

## Setting the staff user's working location

To grant a working location to a staff user in the staff client:

1. Search for the patron. Select Search > Search for Patrons from the top menu.
2. When you retrieve the correct patron record, select Other > User Permission Editor from the upper right corner. The permissions associated with this account appear in the right side of the client, with the Working Location list at the top of the screen.



3. The Working Location list displays the Organizational Units in your consortium. Select the check box for each Organization Unit where this user needs working permissions. Clear any other check boxes for Organization Units where the user no longer requires working permissions.
4. Scroll all the way to the bottom of the page and click Save. This user account is now ready to be used at your library.

As you scroll down the page you will come to the Permissions list. These are the permissions that are given through the Permission Group that you assigned to this user. Depending on your own permissions, you may also have the ability to grant individual permissions directly to this user.

## Comparing approaches for managing permissions

The Evergreen community uses two different approaches to deal with managing permissions for users:

- Staff Client

Evergreen libraries that are most comfortable using the staff client tend to manage permissions by creating different profiles for each type of user. When you create a new user, the profile you assign to the user determines their basic set of permissions. This approach requires many permission groups that contain overlapping sets of permissions: for example, you might need to create a Student Circulator group and a Student Cataloger group. Then if a new employee needs to perform both of these roles, you need to create a third Student Cataloger / Circulator group representing the set of all of the permissions of the first two groups.

The advantage to this approach is that you can maintain the permissions entirely within the staff client; a drawback to this approach is that it can be challenging to remember to add a new permission to all of the groups. Another drawback of this approach is that the user profile is also used to determine circulation and hold rules, so the complexity of your circulation and hold rules might increase significantly.

- Database Access

Evergreen libraries that are comfortable manipulating the database directly tend to manage permissions by creating permission groups that reflect discrete roles within a library. At the database level, you can make a user belong to many different permission groups, and that can simplify your permission management efforts. For example, if you create a Student Circulator group and a Student Cataloger group, and a new employee needs to perform both of these roles, you can simply assign them to both of the groups; you do not need to create an entirely new permission group in this case. An advantage of this approach is that the user profile can represent only the user's borrowing category and requires only the basic Patrons permissions, which can simplify your circulation and hold rules.

Permissions and profiles are not carved in stone. As the system administrator, you can change them as needed. You may set and alter the permissions for each permission group in line with what your library, or possibly your consortium, defines as the appropriate needs for each function in the library.

# Managing permissions in the staff client

In this section, we'll show you in the staff client:

- where to find the available permissions
- where to find the existing permission groups
- how to see the permissions associated with each group
- how to add or remove permissions from a group

We also provide an appendix with a listing of suggested minimum permissions for some essential groups. You can compare the existing permissions with these suggested permissions and, if any are missing, you will know how to add them.

## Where to find existing permissions and what they mean

In the staff client, in the upper right corner of the screen, click on Administration > Server Administration > Permissions.

The list of available permissions will appear on screen and you can scroll down through them to see permissions that are already available in your default installation of Evergreen.

There are over 500 permissions in the permission list. They appear in two columns: Code and Description. Code is the name of the permission as it appear in the Evergreen database. Description is a brief note on what the permission allows. All of the most common permissions have easily understandable descriptions.

## Where to find existing Permission Groups

In the staff client, in the upper right corner of the screen, navigate to Administration > Server Administration > Permission Groups.

Two panes will open on your screen. The left pane provides a tree view of existing Permission Groups. The right pane contains two tabs: Group Configuration and Group Permissions.

In the left pane, you will find a listing of the existing Permission Groups which were installed by default. Click on the + sign next to any folder to expand the tree and see the groups underneath it. You should see the Permission Groups that were listed at the beginning of this chapter. If you do not and you need them, you will have to create them.

## Adding or removing permissions from a Permission Group

First, we will remove a permission from the Staff group.

1. From the list of Permission Groups, click on Staff.
2. In the right pane, click on the Group Permissions tab. You will now see a list of permissions that this group has.

3. From the list, choose `CREATE_CONTAINER`. This will now be highlighted.
4. Click the Delete Selected button. `CREATE_CONTAINER` will be deleted from the list. The system will not ask for a confirmation. If you delete something by accident, you will have to add it back.
5. Click the Save Changes button.

You can select a group of individual items by holding down the Ctrl key and clicking on them. You can select a list of items by clicking on the first item, holding down the Shift key, and clicking on the last item in the list that you want to select.

Now, we will add the permission we just removed back to the Staff group.

1. From the list of Permission Groups, click on Staff.
2. In the right pane, click on the Group Permissions tab.
3. Click on the New Mapping button. The permission mapping dialog box will appear.
4. From the Permission drop down list, choose `CREATE_CONTAINER`.
5. From the Depth drop down list, choose Consortium.
6. Click the checkbox for Grantable.
7. Click the Add Mapping button. The new permission will now appear in the Group Permissions window.
8. Click the Save Changes button.

If you have saved your changes and you don't see them, you may have to click the Reload button in the upper left side of the staff client screen.

## Managing role-based permission groups in the staff client

Main permission groups are granted in the staff client through Edit in the patron record using the Main (Profile) Permission Group field. Additional permission groups can be granted using secondary permission groups.

### Secondary Group Permissions

The Secondary Groups button functionality enables supplemental permission groups to be added to staff accounts. The `CREATE_USER_GROUP_LINK` and `REMOVE_USER_GROUP_LINK` permissions are required to display and use this feature.

In general when creating a secondary permission group do not grant the permission to login to Evergreen.

### Granting Secondary Permissions Groups

1. Open the account of the user you wish to grant secondary permission group to.

2. Click Edit.
3. Click Secondary Groups, located to the right of the Main (Profile) Permission Group.

Main (Profile) Permission Group      Circulators ▾      Secondary Groups

4. From the dropdown menu select one of the secondary permission groups.

5. Click Add.
6. Click Apply Changes.

7. Click Save in the top right hand corner of the Edit Screen to save the user's account.

## Removing Secondary Group Permissions

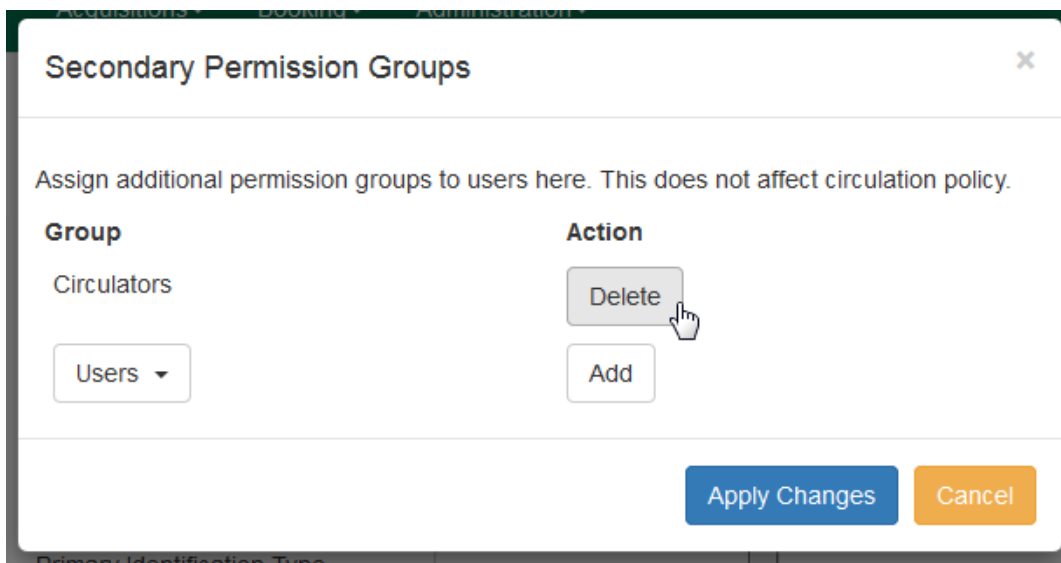
1. Open the account of the user you wish to remove the secondary permission group from.
2. Click Edit.
3. Click Secondary Groups, located to the right of the Main (Profile) Permission Group.

Main (Profile) Permission  
Group

Circulators ▾

Secondary Groups

4. Click Delete beside the permission group you would like to remove.



Secondary Permission Groups

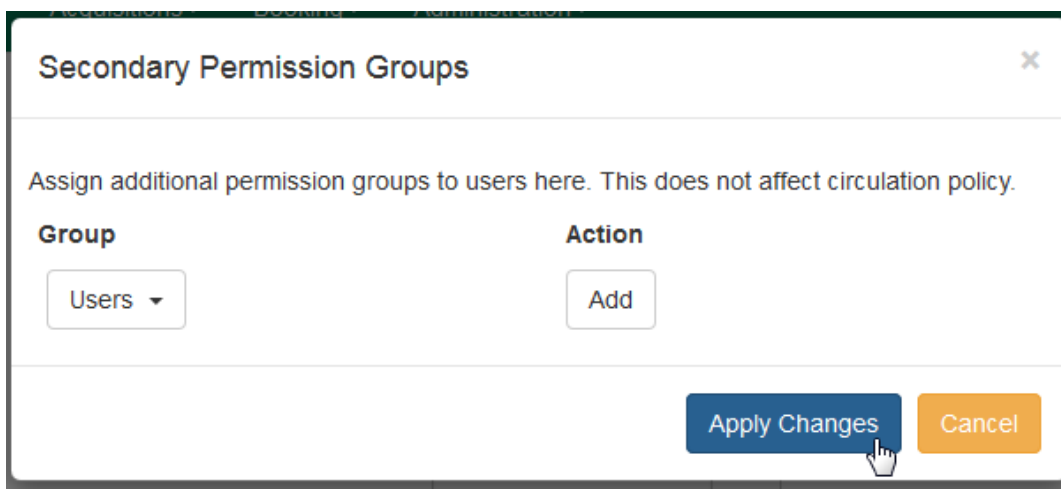
Assign additional permission groups to users here. This does not affect circulation policy.

Group	Action
Circulators	Delete
	Add

Users ▾

Apply Changes Cancel

5. Click Apply Changes.



Secondary Permission Groups

Assign additional permission groups to users here. This does not affect circulation policy.

Group	Action
	Add

Users ▾

Apply Changes Cancel

6. Click Save in the top right hand corner of the Edit Screen to save the user's account.

# Managing role-based permission groups in the database

While the ability to assign a user to multiple permission groups has existed in Evergreen for years, a staff client interface is not currently available to facilitate the work of the Evergreen administrator. However, if you or members of your team are comfortable working directly with the Evergreen database, you can use this approach to separate the borrowing profile of your users from the permissions that you grant to staff, while minimizing the amount of overlapping permissions that you need to manage for a set of permission groups that would otherwise multiply exponentially to represent all possible combinations of staff roles.

In the following example, we create three new groups:

- a Student group used to determine borrowing privileges
- a Student Cataloger group representing a limited set of cataloging permissions appropriate for students
- a Student Circulator group representing a limited set of circulation permissions appropriate for students

Then we add three new users to our system: one who needs to perform some cataloging duties as a student; one who needs perform some circulation duties as a student; and one who needs to perform both cataloging and circulation duties. This section demonstrates how to add these permissions to the users at the database level.

To create the Student group, add a new row to the `permission.grp_tree` table as a child of the Patrons group:

```
INSERT INTO permission.grp_tree (name, parent, usergroup, description, application_perm)
SELECT 'Students', pgt.id, TRUE, 'Student borrowers', 'group_application.user.patron.student'
FROM permission.grp_tree pgt
WHERE name = 'Patrons';
```

To create the Student Cataloger group, add a new row to the `permission.grp_tree` table as a child of the Staff group:

```
INSERT INTO permission.grp_tree (name, parent, usergroup, description, application_perm)
SELECT 'Student Catalogers', pgt.id, TRUE, 'Student catalogers',
'group_application.user.staff.student_cataloger'
FROM permission.grp_tree pgt
WHERE name = 'Staff';
```

To create the Student Circulator group, add a new row to the `permission.grp_tree` table as a child of the Staff group:

```
INSERT INTO permission.grp_tree (name, parent, usergroup, description, application_perm)
SELECT 'Student Circulators', pgt.id, TRUE, 'Student circulators',
'group_application.user.staff.student_circulator'
FROM permission.grp_tree pgt
WHERE name = 'Staff';
```

We want to give the Student Catalogers group the ability to work with MARC records at the consortial level, so we assign the `UPDATE_MARC`, `CREATE_MARC`, and `IMPORT_MARC` permissions at depth 0:

```

WITH pgt AS (
    SELECT id
    FROM permission.grp_tree
    WHERE name = 'Student Catalogers'
)
INSERT INTO permission.grp_perm_map (grp, perm, depth)
SELECT pgt.id, ppl.id, 0
FROM permission.perm_list ppl, pgt
WHERE ppl.code IN ('UPDATE_MARC', 'CREATE_MARC', 'IMPORT_MARC');

```

Similarly, we want to give the Student Circulators group the ability to check out items and record in-house uses at the system level, so we assign the COPY\_CHECKOUT and CREATE\_IN\_HOUSE\_USE permissions at depth 1 (overriding the same Staff permissions that were granted only at depth 2):

```

WITH pgt AS (
    SELECT id
    FROM permission.grp_tree
    WHERE name = 'Student Circulators'
) INSERT INTO permission.grp_perm_map (grp, perm, depth)
SELECT pgt.id, ppl.id, 1
FROM permission.perm_list ppl, pgt
WHERE ppl.code IN ('COPY_CHECKOUT', 'CREATE_IN_HOUSE_USE');

```

Finally, we want to add our students to the groups. The request may arrive in your inbox from the library along the lines of "Please add Mint Julep as a Student Cataloger, Bloody Caesar as a Student Circulator, and Grass Hopper as a Student Cataloger / Circulator; I've already created their accounts and given them a work organizational unit." You can translate that into the following SQL to add the users to the pertinent permission groups, adjusting for the inevitable typos in the names of the users.

First, add our Student Cataloger:

```

WITH pgt AS (
    SELECT id FROM permission.grp_tree
    WHERE name = 'Student Catalogers'
)
INSERT INTO permission.usr_grp_map (usr, grp)
SELECT au.id, pgt.id
FROM actor.usr au, pgt
WHERE first_given_name = 'Mint' AND family_name = 'Julep';

```

Next, add the Student Circulator:

```

WITH pgt AS (
    SELECT id FROM permission.grp_tree
    WHERE name = 'Student Circulators'
)
INSERT INTO permission.usr_grp_map (usr, grp)
SELECT au.id, pgt.id
FROM actor.usr au, pgt
WHERE first_given_name = 'Bloody' AND family_name = 'Caesar';

```

Finally, add the all-powerful Student Cataloger / Student Circulator:

```

WITH pgt AS (
    SELECT id FROM permission.grp_tree
    WHERE name IN ('Student Catalogers', 'Student Circulators')
)
INSERT INTO permission.usr_grp_map (usr, grp)
SELECT au.id, pgt.id
FROM actor.usr au, pgt
WHERE first_given_name = 'Grass' AND family_name = 'Hopper';

```

While adopting this role-based approach might seem labour-intensive when applied to a handful of students in this example, over time it can help keep the permission profiles of your system relatively simple in comparison to the alternative approach of rapidly reproducing permission groups, overlapping permissions, and permissions granted on a one-by-one basis to individual users.



# Chapter 72. User and Group Permissions

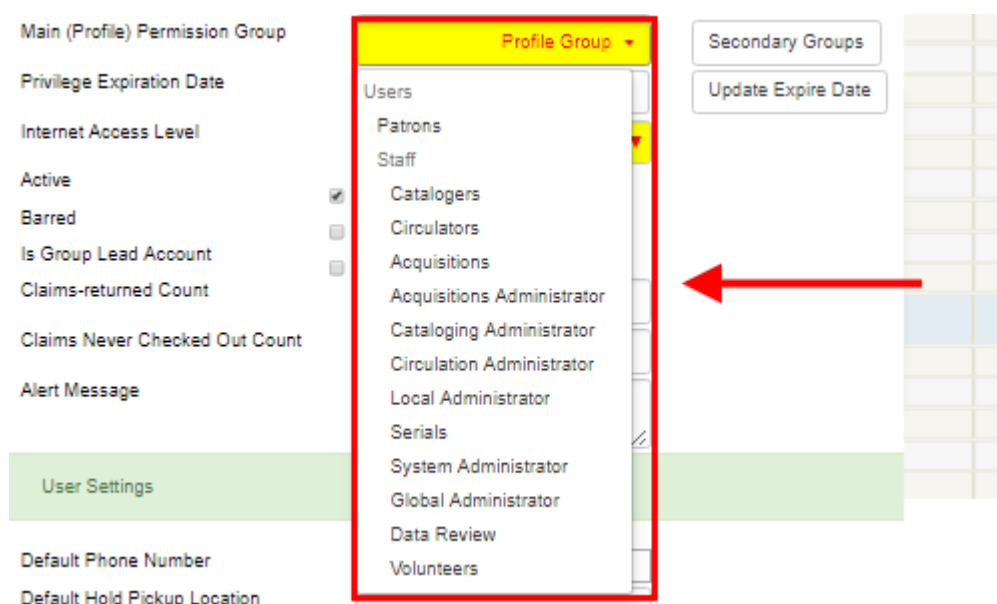
It is essential to understand how user and group permissions can be used to allow staff to fulfill their roles while ensuring that they only have access to the appropriate level.

Permissions in Evergreen are applied to a specific location and system depth based on the home library of the user. The user will only have that permission within the scope provided by the Depth field in relation to his/her working locations.

Evergreen provides group application permissions in order to restrict which staff members have the ability to assign elevated permissions to a user, and which staff members have the ability to edit users in particular groups.

## Staff Accounts

New staff accounts are created in much the same way as patron accounts, using Circulation → Register Patron or Shift+F1. Select one of the staff profiles from the Profile Group drop-down menu.

The image shows a screenshot of the Evergreen user registration interface. On the left, there are several form fields: 'Main (Profile) Permission Group', 'Privilege Expiration Date', 'Internet Access Level', 'Active' (with a checked checkbox), 'Barred' (with an unchecked checkbox), 'Is Group Lead Account' (with an unchecked checkbox), 'Claims-returned Count', 'Claims Never Checked Out Count', 'Alert Message', 'User Settings' (highlighted in green), 'Default Phone Number', and 'Default Hold Pickup Location'. In the center, a 'Profile Group' dropdown menu is open, showing a list of roles: 'Users', 'Patrons', 'Staff', 'Catalogers', 'Circulators', 'Acquisitions', 'Acquisitions Administrator', 'Cataloging Administrator', 'Circulation Administrator', 'Local Administrator', 'Serials', 'System Administrator', 'Global Administrator', 'Data Review', and 'Volunteers'. A red box highlights the entire dropdown menu, and a red arrow points from the right towards the 'Staff' option. To the right of the dropdown, there are buttons for 'Secondary Groups' and 'Update Expire Date', and a table with multiple rows and columns.

Each new staff account must be assigned a Working Location which determines its access level in staff client interfaces.

1. To assign a working location, open the newly created staff account using F1 (retrieve patron) or F4 (patron search).
2. Select Other → User Permission Editor

The screenshot shows the Evergreen staff client interface for a patron named Terry, Michelle Kristy. The top navigation bar includes buttons for 'Check Out', 'Items Out (0)', 'Holds (0 / 0)', 'Bills (\$0.00)', 'Messages', 'Edit', and 'Other'. The 'Other' button is highlighted with a red box. A dropdown menu is open from 'Other', showing various options. The 'User Permission Editor' option is highlighted with a red box. A red arrow points from the 'Other' button to the 'User Permission Editor' option. On the left, a profile card for Terry, Michelle Kristy is visible, showing details like Home Library (BR2), Net Access (Filtered), Date of Birth, Last Activity, and various dates. Below the profile card is a table with columns: #, Balance, Alerts, Due Date, Call Num, Remainir, Title, Circulation, Location, Barcode. The table is currently empty, showing 'No Items To Display'.

- Place a check in the box next to the desired working location, then scroll to the bottom of the display and click Save.



In multi-branch libraries it is possible to assign more than one working location

## Staff Account Permissions

To view a detailed list of permissions for a particular Evergreen account go to Administration → User Permission Editor in the staff client.

## Granting Additional Permissions

A Local System Administrator (LSA) may selectively grant LSA permissions to other staff accounts. In the example below a Circ +Full Cat account is granted permission to process offline transactions, a function which otherwise requires an LSA login.

- Log in as a Local System Administrator.
- Select Administration → User Permission Editor and enter the staff account barcode when prompted

OR

Retrieve the staff account first, then select Other → User Permission Editor

- The User Permission Editor will load (this may take a few seconds). Greyed-out permissions cannot be edited because they are either a) already granted to the account, or b) not available to any staff account, including LSAs.

User Name:  Barcode:   
 First Name:  Middle Name:  Last Name:

**Working Location**

☒ Powell River Public Library (BPRDP)

①	Permission	Applied	Depth	Grantable
	ABORT_REMOTE_TRANSIT	② <input type="checkbox"/>	③ Library	<input type="checkbox"/> ④
	ABORT_TRANSIT	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_ACQ_FUND	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_CIRC_MATRIX_MATCHPOINT	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_CIRC_MOD	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_CURRENCY_TYPE	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_FUND	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_FUNDING_SOURCE	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_GROUP_PENALTY_THRESHOLD	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_HOLD_MATRIX_MATCHPOINT	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_MARC_CODE	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_PROVIDER	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_STANDING_PENALTY	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_SURVEY	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_TRIGGER_CLEANUP	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_TRIGGER_EVENT_DEF	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
	ADMIN_TRIGGER_HOOK	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 1) List of permission names.
- 2) If checked the permission is granted to this account.
- 3) Depth limits application to the staff member's library and should be left at the default.
- 4) If checked this staff account will be able to grant the new privilege to other accounts (not recommended).
4. To allow processing of offline transactions check the Applied column next to OFFLINE\_EXECUTE.

MARK_ITEM_ON_HOLD'S_SHELF	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
MARK_ITEM_ON_ORDER	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
MARK_ITEM_RESHELVING	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
MAX_RENEWALS_REACHED.override	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
MERGE_BIB_RECORDS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
MERGE_USERS	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
MR_HOLDS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Consortium	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
OFFLINE_EXECUTE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
OFFLINE_UPLOAD	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
OFFLINE_VIEW	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
OPAC_LOGIN	<input type="checkbox"/>	Consortium	<input type="checkbox"/>

5. Scroll down and click Save to apply the changes.

group_application.user.vendor	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
money.collections_tracker.create	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>
money.collections_tracker.delete	<input type="checkbox"/>	Library	<input type="checkbox"/>

Save

# Chapter 73. Work Log

## Expanding the Work Log

The Work Log records checkins, checkouts, patron registration, patron editing, renewals, payments and holds placed from with the patron record for a given login.

To access the Work Log go to Administration → Local Administration → Work Log.

There are two seperate logs, Most Recently Logged Staff Actions and Most Recently Affected patrons. The Most Recently Logged Staff Actions logs the the transactions in order they have occured on the workstation. The Most Recently Affected Patrons log is a listing of the last patrons that transactions happened on.

The Work Log can contain a maximum number of transactions, this number is set via the [Library Settings Editor](#). They are in the GUI group of settings. Work Log: Maximum Actions Logged effects the number of transactions listing under the Most Recently Logged Staff Actions and Work Log: Maximum Patrons Logged limits the number of patrons that are listed in the log.

# Chapter 74. Recent Staff Searches

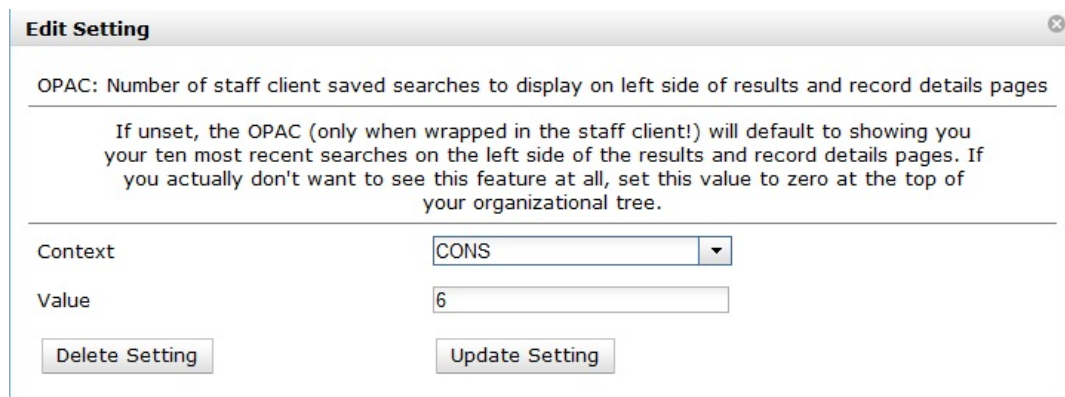
This feature enables you to view your recent searches as you perform them in the staff client. The number of searches that you can view is configurable. This feature is only available through the staff client; it is not available to patrons in the OPAC.

## Administrative Settings

By default, ten searches will be saved as you search the staff client. If you want to change the number of saved searches, then you can configure the number of searches that you wish to save through the Library Settings Editor in the Admin module.

To configure the number of recent staff searches:

1. Click Administration → Local Administration → Library Settings Editor.
2. Scroll to OPAC: Number of staff client saved searches to display on left side of results and record details pages
3. Click Edit.
4. Select a Context from the drop down menu.
5. Enter the number of searches that you wish to save in the Value field.
6. Click Update Setting



**Edit Setting**

OPAC: Number of staff client saved searches to display on left side of results and record details pages

If unset, the OPAC (only when wrapped in the staff client!) will default to showing you your ten most recent searches on the left side of the results and record details pages. If you actually don't want to see this feature at all, set this value to zero at the top of your organizational tree.

Context: CONS

Value: 6

Delete Setting Update Setting



To retain this setting, the system administrator must restart the web server.

If you do not want to save any searches, then you can turn off this feature.

To deactivate this feature:

1. Follow steps 1-4 (one through four) as listed in the previous section.

2. In the value field, enter 0 (zero).
3. Click Update Setting. This will prevent you from viewing any saved searches.

## Recent Staff Searches

Evergreen will save staff searches that are entered through either the basic or advanced search fields. To view recent staff searches:

1. Enter a search term in either the basic or advanced search fields.
2. Your search results for the current search will appear in the middle of the screen. The most recent searches will appear on the left side of the screen.

Search the Catalog [Advanced Search](#)

Search  for   in

[\[ Click to Refine Your Original Search \]](#)

[Another Search](#) [Advanced Search](#) Sort by  [Detailed View](#)

---


**Search Results** Results 1 - 10 of 11 (page 1 of 2)

---


**Your recent searches:**

- [bread](#)
- [spaghetti](#)
- [cooking](#)
- [recipe](#)
- [dog](#)
- [rain](#)

---

1.  [Retro kids cooking :](#)  
[Perry, Richard.](#) c2004.  
Call number: ACQ14  
0 of 1 copy available

---

2.  [Retro kids cooking :](#)  
[Perry, Richard.](#) c2004.  
0 of 0 copies available

## **Part XV. Other administration**



# Table of Contents

- [75. Introduction](#) ..... 346
- [76. Notifications / Action Triggers](#) ..... 347
  - [Introduction](#) ..... 347
  - [Event Definitions](#) ..... 347
    - [Table 1: Action Trigger Event Definitions](#) ..... 347
  - [Creating Action Triggers](#) ..... 348
    - [Cloning Existing Action Triggers](#) ..... 350
    - [Editing Action Triggers](#) ..... 350
    - [Deleting Action Triggers](#) ..... 350
    - [Testing Action Triggers](#) ..... 350
  - [Hooks](#) ..... 351
  - [Reactors](#) ..... 351
  - [Validators](#) ..... 352

# Chapter 75. Introduction

This section describes other staff client administrator tasks.

# Chapter 76. Notifications / Action Triggers

## Introduction

Action Triggers give administrators the ability to set up actions for specific events. They are useful for notification events such as hold notifications.

To access the Action Triggers module, select Administration → Local Administration → Notifications / Action triggers.



You must have Local Administrator permissions to access the Action Triggers module.

You will notice four tabs on this page: [Event Definitions](#), [Hooks](#), [Reactors](#) and [Validators](#).

## Event Definitions

Event Definitions is the main tab and contains the key fields when working with action triggers. These fields include:

**Table 1: Action Trigger Event Definitions**

Field	Description
Owning Library	The shortname of the library for which the action / trigger / hook is defined.
Name	The name of the trigger event, that links to a trigger event environment containing a set of fields that will be returned to the <a href="#">Validators</a> and/or <a href="#">Reactors</a> for processing.
<a href="#">Hook</a>	The name of the trigger for the trigger event. The underlying action_trigger.hook table defines the Fieldmapper class in the core_type column off of which the rest of the field definitions “hang”.
Enabled	Sets the given trigger as enabled or disabled. This must be set to enabled for the Action trigger to run.
Processing Delay	Defines how long after a given trigger / hook event has occurred before the associated action (“Reactor”) will be taken.
Processing Delay Context Field	Defines the field associated with the event on which the processing delay is calculated. For example, the processing delay context field on the hold.capture hook (which has a core_type of ahr) is capture_time.

Processing Group Context Field	Used to batch actions based on its associated group.
<a href="#">Reactor</a>	Links the action trigger to the Reactor.
<a href="#">Validator</a>	The subroutines receive the trigger environment as an argument (see the linked Name for the environment definition) and returns either 1 if the validator is true or 0 if the validator returns false.
Event Repeatability Delay	Allows events to be repeated after this delay interval.
Failure Cleanup	After an event is reacted to and if there is a failure a cleanup module can be run to clean up after the event.
Granularity	Used to group events by how often they should be run. Options are Hourly, Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Yearly, but you may also create new values.
Max Event Validity Delay	Allows events to have a range of time that they are valid. This value works with the Processing Delay to define a time range.
Message Library Path	Defines the org_unit object for a Patron Message Center message.
Message Template	A Template Toolkit template that can be used to generate output for a Patron Message Center message. The output may or may not be used by the reactor or another external process.
Message Title	The title that will display on a Patron Message Center message.
Message User Path	Defines the user object for a Patron Message Center message.
Opt-In Settings Type	Choose which User Setting Type will decide if this event will be valid for a certain user. Use this to allow users to Opt-In or Opt-Out of certain events.
Opt-In User Field	Set to the name of the field in the selected hook's core type that will link the core type to the actor.user table.
Success Cleanup	After an event is reacted to successfully a cleanup module can be run to clean up after the event.
Template	A Template Toolkit template that can be used to generate output. The output may or may not be used by the reactor or another external process.

## Creating Action Triggers

1. From the top menu, select Administration → Local Administration → Notifications / Action triggers.
2. Click on the New button.
3. Select an Owning Library.

4. Create a unique Name for your new action trigger.
5. Select the Hook.
6. Check the Enabled check box.
7. Set the Processing Delay in the appropriate format. E.g. 7 days to run 7 days from the trigger event or 00:01:00 to run 1 hour after the Processing Delay Context Field.
8. Set the Processing Delay Context Field and Processing Group Context Field.
9. Select the Reactor and Validator.
- 10 Set the Event Repeatability Delay.
- 11 Select the Failure Cleanup and Granularity.
- 12 Set the Max Event Validity Delay.
- 13 If you wish to send a User Message through the Message Center, set a Message Library Path. Enter text in the Message Template. Enter a title for this message in Message Title, and set a value in Message User Path.
- 14 Select the Opt-In Setting Type.
- 15 Set the Opt-In User Field.
- 16 Select the Success Cleanup.
- 17 Enter text in the Template text box if required. These are for email messages. Here is a sample template for sending 90 day overdue notices:

```
[%- USE date -%]
[%- user = target.0.usr -%]
To: [%- params.recipient_email || user.email %]
From: [%- helpers.get_org_setting(target.home_ou.id, 'org.bounced_emails') || lib.email ||
params.sender_email || default_sender %]
Subject: Overdue Items Marked Lost
Auto-Submitted: auto-generated

Dear [% user.family_name %], [% user.first_given_name %]
The following items are 90 days overdue and have been marked LOST.
[%- params.recipient_email || user.email %][%- params.sender_email || default_sender %]
[% FOR circ IN target %]
  Title: [% circ.target_copy.call_number.record.simple_record.title %]
  Barcode: [% circ.target_copy.barcode %]
  Due: [% date.format(helpers.format_date(circ.due_date), '%Y-%m-%d') %]
  Item Cost: [% helpers.get_copy_price(circ.target_copy) %]
  Total Owed For Transaction: [% circ.billable_transaction.summary.total_owed %]
  Library: [% circ.circ_lib.name %]
[% END %]

[% FOR circ IN target %]
  Title: [% circ.target_copy.call_number.record.simple_record.title %]
  Barcode: [% circ.target_copy.barcode %]
```

```
Due: [% date.format(helpers.format_date(circ.due_date), '%Y-%m-%d') %]  
Item Cost: [% helpers.get_copy_price(circ.target_copy) %]  
Total Owed For Transaction: [% circ.billable_transaction.summary.total_owed %]  
Library: [% circ.circ_lib.name %]  
[% END %]
```

18Once you are satisfied with your new event trigger, click the Save button located at the bottom of the form.



A quick and easy way to create new action triggers is to clone an existing action trigger.

## Cloning Existing Action Triggers

1. Check the check box next to the action trigger you wish to clone.
2. Click Clone Selected on the top left of the page.
3. An editing window will open. Notice that the fields will be populated with content from the cloned action trigger. Edit as necessary and give the new action trigger a unique Name.
4. Click Save.

## Editing Action Triggers

1. Double-click on the action trigger you wish to edit.
2. The edit screen will appear. When you are finished editing, click Save at the bottom of the form. Or click Cancel to exit the screen without saving.



Before deleting an action trigger, you should consider disabling it through the editing form. This way you can keep it for future use or cloning.

## Deleting Action Triggers

1. Check the check box next to the action trigger you wish to delete
2. Click Delete Selected on the top-right of the page.

## Testing Action Triggers

1. Go to the list of action triggers.
2. Click on the blue link text for the action trigger you'd like to test.

3. Go to the Test tab.
4. If there is a test available, fill in the required information.
5. View the output of the test.



If you are testing an email or SMS notification, use a test account and email as an example. Using the Test feature will actually result in the notification being sent if configured correctly. Similarly, use a test item or barcode when testing a circulation-based event like Mark Lost since the test will mark the item as lost.

## Hooks

Hooks define the Fieldmapper class in the `core_type` column off of which the rest of the field definitions “hang”.

**Table 2. Hooks**

Field	Description
Hook Key	A unique name given to the hook.
Core Type	Used to link the action trigger to the IDL class in <code>fm_IDL.xml</code>
Description	Text to describe the purpose of the hook.
Passive	Indicates whether or not an event is created by direct user action or is circumstantial.

You may also create, edit and delete Hooks but the Core Type must refer to an IDL class in the `fm_IDL.xml` file.

## Reactors

Reactors link the trigger definition to the action to be carried out.

**Table 3. Action Trigger Reactors**

Field	Description
Module Name	The name of the Module to run if the action trigger is validated. It must be defined as a subroutine in <code>/openils/lib/perl5/OpenILS/Application/Trigger/Reactor.pm</code> or as a module in <code>/openils/</code>

	<code>lib/perl5/OpenILS/Application/Trigger/Reactor/*.pm</code> .
Description	Description of the Action to be carried out.

You may also create, edit and delete Reactors. Just remember that there must be an associated subroutine or module in the Reactor Perl module.

## Validators

Validators set the validation test to be preformed to determine whether the action trigger is executed.

**Table 4. Action Trigger Validators**

Field	Description
Module Name	The name of the subroutine in <code>/openils/lib/perl5/OpenILS/Application/Trigger/Reactor.pm</code> to validate the action trigger.
Description	Description of validation test to run.

You may also create, edit and delete Validators. Just remember that their must be an associated subroutine in the Reactor.pm Perl module.



# Appendix A. Attributions

Copyright © 2009-2018 Evergreen DIG

Copyright © 2007-2018 Equinox

Copyright © 2007-2018 Dan Scott

Copyright © 2009-2018 BC Libraries Cooperative (SITKA)

Copyright © 2008-2018 King County Library System

Copyright © 2009-2018 Pioneer Library System

Copyright © 2009-2018 PALS

Copyright © 2009-2018 Georgia Public Library Service

Copyright © 2008-2018 Project Conifer

Copyright © 2009-2018 Bibliomation

Copyright © 2008-2018 Evergreen Indiana

Copyright © 2008-2018 SC LENDS

Copyright @ 2012-2018 CW MARS

DIG Contributors

- Hilary Caws-Elwitt, Susquehanna County Library
- Karen Collier, Kent County Public Library
- George Duimovich, NRCan Library
- Lynn Floyd, Indiana State Library
- Sally Fortin, Equinox Software
- Wolf Halton, Lyrasis
- Jennifer Pringle, SITKA
- June Rayner, eiNetwork
- Steve Sheppard
- Ben Shum, Bibliomation
- Roni Shwaish, eiNetwork
- Robert Soulliere, Mohawk College

- Remington Steed, Calvin College
- Jeanette Lundgren, CW MARS
- Tim Spindler, CW MARS
- Jane Sandberg, Linn-Benton Community College
- Lindsay Stratton, Pioneer Library System
- Yamil Suarez, Berklee College of Music
- Jenny Turner, PALS

# Appendix B. Admonitions

- Note



- warning



- caution



- tip



# Appendix C. Licensing



This work is licensed under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License](https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/).

# Index

## A

- accounts, 98, 98
- Acquisitions
  - Library Settings Editor, 35
- acquisitions
  - claiming, 94
  - currency types, 96
  - distribution formulas
    - templates, 97
- EDI
  - accounts, 98
  - messages, 103
- exchange rates, 103
- funding sources, 106
- funds, 107
  - fiscal rollover, 110
  - reports, 109
  - tags, 105
- invoices, 111
- line item
  - cancellation, 93
- line items, 112
- MARC federated search, 104
- permissions, 93
- purchase order
  - cancellation, 93
- action triggers
  - event definitions
    - notifications, 347
- address alerts, 203
- Age Protection, 183
- aggregate filters, 303
- Allow others to use my account, 180
- applying filters, 303
  - aggregate filters, 303
  - base filter, 303, 303

## B

- Barcode Completion
  - Lazy Circ, 196
- base filter, 303, 303
- batch delete
  - patrons, 195
- batch edit
  - patrons, 194
- batch operations, 194

## Booking

- Library Settings Editor, 37

## C

- cancellation, 93, 93
- Cataloging
  - Library Settings Editor, 37
- checking out
  - materials on another patron's account, 180
- checkout, 223
- choosing reports fields, 293
- Circulation
  - Library Settings Editor, 39
- circulation
  - recalls
    - hold-driven, 173
- claiming, 94
- cloning, 316
- Closed Dates, 208
- configuring, 138
- copy status, 175
- copy tags, 135
- count, 320
- creating, 291
- creating templates, 293
  - choosing reports fields, 293
- Credit Card Processing
  - Library Settings Editor, 48
- currency types, 96

## D

- Data Types
  - Library Settings Editor, 76
- data types, 318
- distribution formulas
  - templates, 97

## E

- EDI
  - accounts, 98, 98
  - messages, 103, 103
- edit patron, 180
- edit patron form, 180
- email, 180
- email addresses, 180
- ephemeral items, 178
- event definitions
  - notifications, 347
- Excel, 313

exchange rates, 103

Exporting

Library Settings Editor, 33

exporting templates, 323

## F

field transform, 296

field transforms, 319

count, 320

output type, 320, 320, 320

raw data, 320

raw distinct, 320

Finances

Library Settings Editor, 50

fiscal rollover, 110

Fixed fields, 138

folders, 291

creating, 291

managing, 292

footers, 21, 22

forms

edit patron, 180

new patron, 180

patron registration, 180

funding sources, 106

funds, 107, 109

fiscal rollover, 110

reports, 109

tags, 105

## G

generating, 308

Global

Library Settings Editor, 60

Graphic User Interface

Library Settings Editor, 53

guardian, 180

GUI

Library Settings Editor, 53

## H

headers, 21, 22

hold-driven, 173

hold-driven recalls, 173

Holds, 183

Age Protection, 183

Library Settings Editor, 61

holds

picking up another patron's, 180

## I

Importing

Library Settings Editor, 33

invoices, 111

## J

juvenile, 180

## L

Lazy Circ, 196

Library

Library Settings Editor, 64

Library Settings Editor, 30, 33, 33, 35, 37, 37, 39, 48, 50, 53, 53, 53, 60, 61, 64, 65, 69, 69, 71, 71, 71, 72, 74, 75, 76

line item

cancellation, 93

line items, 112

logging in, 16

logging out, 17

## M

macros, 223

managing, 292

MARC editor

configuring, 138

MARC federated search, 104

materials on another patron's account, 180

messages, 103, 103

## N

new patron, 180

new patron form, 180

notifications, 347

## O

Offline

Library Settings Editor, 69

on-the-fly circulation, 178

OPAC

Library Settings Editor, 65

output, 313

Excel, 313

spreadsheet, 313

tabular, 313

output type, 320, 320, 320

## P

parent, 180

- parent/guardian field, 180
- patron buckets, 194
- patron registration, 180
- patron registration form, 180
- Patron Registration Settings
  - Library Settings Editor, 53
- patrons, 194, 195
  - batch operations, 194
  - email addresses, 180
  - parent/guardian field, 180
- permissions, 93
- picking up another patron's, 180
- pre-cataloged items
  - routing to a different library, 178
- printing
  - footers, 21, 22
  - headers, 21, 22
- print templates, 223, 223
- privacy waiver, 180
- Program
  - Library Settings Editor, 69
- purchase order
  - cancellation, 93

## R

- raw data, 320
- raw distinct, 320
- recalls
  - hold-driven, 173
- receipt template editor, 223, 223
  - checkout, 223
  - macros, 223
- Receipt Templates
  - Library Settings Editor, 71
- recurring, 317
- registering a workstation, 15
- reports, 109
  - applying filters, 303
    - aggregate filters, 303
    - base filter, 303, 303
  - cloning, 316
  - creating templates, 293
    - choosing reports fields, 293
  - data types, 318
  - exporting templates, 323
  - field transform, 296
  - field transforms, 319
    - count, 320
    - output type, 320, 320, 320

- raw data, 320
- raw distinct, 320
- folders, 291
  - creating, 291
  - managing, 292
- funds, 109
- generating, 308
- output, 313
  - Excel, 313
  - spreadsheet, 313
  - tabular, 313
- recurring, 317
- routing to a different library, 178

## S

- Security
  - Library Settings Editor, 72
- Self Check
  - Library Settings Editor, 74
- SMS Settings
  - Library Settings Editor, 71
- spreadsheet, 313
- staff client
  - logging in, 16
  - logging out, 17
  - registering a workstation, 15
- Work Log, 341

## T

- tabular, 313
- tags, 105
- templates, 97
- Text Messaging
  - Library Settings Editor, 71

## V

- Vandelay
  - Library Settings Editor, 75

## W

- web client
  - print templates, 223
  - receipt template editor, 223
- Work Log, 341, 341, 341
- workstation
  - Work Log, 341